

# Oracle® Database Appliance

## X7-2 Deployment and User's Guide



Release 19.5 for Linux x86-64  
F24220-01  
November 2019

The Oracle logo, consisting of a solid red square with the word "ORACLE" in white, uppercase, sans-serif font centered within it.

ORACLE®

Oracle Database Appliance X7-2 Deployment and User's Guide, Release 19.5 for Linux x86-64

F24220-01

Copyright © 2016, 2019, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Aparna Kamath

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

# Contents

## Preface

---

Audience	xviii
Documentation Accessibility	xviii
Related Documents	xix
Conventions	xix

## 1 Oracle Database Appliance Checklists

---

Checklist for System Requirements	1-1
Deployment Checklist for Oracle Database Appliance Bare Metal Installations	1-6
Checklist for Custom Network Address Configuration	1-8

## 2 Introduction to Oracle Database Appliance

---

About Oracle Database Appliance	2-1
Oracle Database Appliance Software Terminology	2-3
About the Web Console	2-5

## 3 Ready to Oracle Database Appliance for Deployment

---

Attaching Network and Storage Cables to Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA	3-1
Attaching Network Cables to Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S or X7-2M	3-4
Attaching Power Cords and Initializing Components	3-5
Configuring Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager	3-6
Powering On Oracle Database Appliance the First Time	3-7

## 4 Provisioning Oracle Database Appliance Baremetal System

---

Plumbing the Network	4-1
Verifying Cabling and Network Connections	4-4
Downloading Oracle Database Appliance Software	4-6
Installing Oracle Database Appliance Software	4-7

Creating the Appliance	4-8
------------------------	-----

## 5 Oracle Database Appliance Postinstallation Tasks

---

Configuring CPU Core Count	5-1
Securing Oracle ILOM Service Processors	5-2
Changing Oracle Database Appliance Passwords	5-2

## 6 Re-imaging Oracle Database Appliance

---

Cleaning Up Incomplete or Failed Installations	6-1
Restoring an Oracle Database Appliance Baremetal System	6-3
Performing Secure Erase of Data on Storage Disks	6-5

## 7 Managing Oracle Databases

---

About Administrative Groups and Users on Oracle Database Appliance	7-1
About Data Migration Options for Oracle Database Appliance	7-2
Working with Databases	7-3
Viewing Databases	7-4
Creating a Database	7-4
Creating a Database Instance	7-7
Cloning a Database from Backup	7-8
Cloning an Oracle ACFS Database Using the Web Console	7-9
Cloning an Oracle ACFS Database Using Command Line Interface	7-10
Upgrading a Database	7-11
Deleting a Database	7-11
Working with Database Homes	7-11
About Managing Multiple Oracle Homes on Oracle Database Appliance	7-12
Viewing Database Homes	7-13
Creating a Database Home	7-13
Deleting a Database Home	7-13
Migrating Databases	7-14
About Migrating Databases	7-14
Configuring a Static Listener	7-15
Migrating a Database	7-16
Registering a Database	7-17
About Managing Multiple Database Instances Using Instance Caging	7-19
Oracle EM Express and DB Console	7-20

## 8 Managing Storage

---

About Managing Storage	8-1
Storage on Single Node Platforms	8-2
Storage Options for Single Node Systems	8-2
Adding NVMe Storage Disks	8-3
Storage on Multi Node Platforms	8-5
About Expanding Storage on Multi-Node Systems	8-5
Preparing for a Storage Upgrade	8-8
Preparing for a Storage Upgrade for a Virtualized Platform	8-9
Adding Solid-State Drives (SSDs) for Data Storage	8-11
Adding the Storage Expansion Shelf	8-14

## 9 Managing Networks

---

About Network Infrastructure and VLANs on Oracle Database Appliance	9-1
Viewing Configured Networks and Network Interfaces	9-3
Creating a Network	9-4
Creating a Non-Bonded Physical Network	9-5
Updating a Network	9-6
Deleting a Network	9-6

## 10 Backup, Restore and Recover Databases

---

About Database Backup and Recovery Options	10-1
Creating a Mount Point for NFS Backup Location	10-8
Configuring Agent Proxy Settings for Object Store Access	10-10
Creating a Database Backup Policy	10-11
Updating a Database with a Backup Policy	10-12
Updating a Database Backup Policy	10-12
Backing Up a Database Using the Web Console	10-13
Viewing Backup Reports	10-13
Recovering a Database Using the Web Console	10-14
Deleting a Backup Using the Web Console	10-14
Deleting a Backup Policy	10-14
Using the CLI to Backup, Restore, and Recover	10-15
Preparing for Database Backup to Disk	10-15
Preparing for Database Backup to NFS Location	10-16
Preparing for Database Backup to Oracle Cloud	10-17
Backing Up a Database with the CLI	10-19
Recovering a Database with the CLI	10-20
Restoring a Database with the CLI	10-22

## 11 Managing Oracle Database Appliance KVM Virtualization

---

About KVM Virtualization	11-1
--------------------------	------

## 12 Oracle Database Appliance Command-Line Interface

---

About Oracle Database Appliance Command-Line Interface	12-2
Managing ODACLI Privileges and Security with SUDO	12-4
odacli Network Commands	12-7
odacli configure-firstnet	12-7
odacli list-networks	12-9
odacli describe-network	12-10
odacli create-network	12-11
odacli configure-network	12-12
odacli update-network	12-13
odacli delete-network	12-14
odacli describe-networkinterface	12-15
odacli list-networkinterfaces	12-16
odacli Apply Patch and Update Commands	12-17
odacli describe-component	12-18
odacli describe-latestpatch	12-23
odacli create-prepatchreport	12-24
odacli describe-prepatchreport	12-25
odacli list-prepatchreports	12-28
odacli cleanup-patchrepo	12-29
odacli list-availablepatches	12-30
odacli delete-prepatchreport	12-31
odacli list-agentconfig-parameters	12-32
odacli update-agentconfig-parameters	12-33
odacli update-dbhome	12-34
odacli update-dcsadmin	12-35
odacli update-dcscomponents	12-36
odacli update-dcsagent	12-37
odacli update-registry	12-38
odacli update-repository	12-39
odacli update-server	12-41
odaadmcli orachk	12-42
odacli update-storage	12-43
odacli Appliance Commands	12-43

odacli create-appliance	12-44
odacli describe-appliance	12-44
odacli describe-system	12-45
odacli list-featuretracking	12-48
odacli-adm set-credential	12-51
odacli Backup and Recovery Commands	12-52
odacli create-backup	12-53
odacli create-backupconfig	12-54
odacli create-objectstoreswift	12-55
odacli delete-backup	12-56
odacli delete-backupconfig	12-57
odacli delete-objectstoreswift	12-58
odacli describe-backupreport	12-59
odacli describe-schedule	12-60
odacli irestore-database	12-61
odacli list-backupreports	12-63
odacli list-backupconfigs	12-63
odacli list-objectstoreswifts	12-64
odacli list-schedules	12-64
odacli recover-database	12-65
odacli update-backupconfig	12-66
odacli update-database	12-67
odacli update-objectstoreswift	12-69
odacli update-schedule	12-70
odacli CPU Core Commands	12-71
odacli list-cpucores	12-71
odacli describe-cpucore	12-72
update-cpucore	12-72
odacli Database Commands	12-73
odacli list-databases	12-74
odacli describe-database	12-74
odacli create-database	12-75
odacli clone-database	12-79
odacli modify-database	12-80
odacli register-database	12-81
odacli upgrade-database	12-84
odacli delete-database	12-86
odacli DBHome Commands	12-87
odacli list-dbhomes	12-87
odacli describe-dbhome	12-88
odacli create-dbhome	12-89

odacli delete-dbhome	12-90
odacli Database Storage Commands	12-90
odacli list-dbstorages	12-91
odacli describe-dbstorage	12-92
odacli create-dbstorage	12-93
odacli delete-dbstorage	12-95
odacli describe-dgstorage	12-95
odacli list-dgstorages	12-97
odacli Job Commands	12-99
odacli list-jobs	12-99
odacli describe-job	12-103
odacli list-scheduled-executions	12-103
Log Commands	12-104
odaadmcli manage diagcollect	12-105
odacli list-logspaceusage	12-107
odacli create-logcleanjob	12-108
odacli list-logcleanjobs	12-109
odacli describe-logcleanjob	12-110
odacli create-auto-logclean-policy	12-111
odacli list-auto-logclean-policy	12-112
odacli Oracle Auto Service Request Commands	12-113
odacli configure-asr	12-113
odacli update-asr	12-115
odacli describe-asr	12-116
odacli test-asr	12-117
odacli delete-asr	12-118
odacli OS Commands	12-118
odacli list-osconfigurations	12-119
odacli update-osconfigurations	12-119
odaadmcli Hardware Monitoring Commands	12-121
odaadmcli show cooling	12-121
odaadmcli show env_hw	12-122
odaadmcli show fs	12-122
odaadmcli show memory	12-123
odaadmcli show network	12-124
odaadmcli show power	12-125
odaadmcli show processor	12-125
odaadmcli show server	12-126
Storage Commands	12-127
odaadmcli expand storage	12-127
odaadmcli show disk	12-128



odaadmcli show diskgroup	12-130
odaadmcli show controller	12-131
odaadmcli show raidsyncstatus	12-132
odaadmcli show storage	12-132
odaadmcli stordiag	12-133
odaadmcli power disk	12-134
odacli validate-storagetopology	12-135

## 13 Troubleshooting Oracle Database Appliance

---

Viewing Component Information on the Appliance	13-2
Errors When Logging into the Web Console	13-5
Errors when re-imaging Oracle Database Appliance	13-6
Using the Oracle ORAchk Health Check Tool	13-6
About Oracle Trace File Analyzer Collector	13-8
Running Oracle Trace File Analyzer (TFA) Collector Commands	13-9
Running the Disk Diagnostic Tool	13-11
Running the Oracle Database Appliance Hardware Monitoring Tool	13-12
Configuring a Trusted SSL Certificate for Oracle Database Appliance	13-13
Option 1: Creating a Key and Java Keystore and Importing a Trusted Certificate	13-14
Option 2: Packaging an Existing PEM-format Key and Certificates in a New Java Keystore	13-16
Option 3: Converting an Existing PKCS or PFX Keystore to a Java Keystore	13-16
Configuring the DCS Server to Use Custom Keystore	13-17
Configuring the DCS Agent for Custom Certificate	13-18
Disabling the Web Console	13-18
Preparing Log Files for Oracle Support Services	13-19

## A Oracle Database Appliance Software Configuration Defaults

---

Directory Paths for Oracle Database Appliance	A-1
Location of Log Files	A-1
Oracle Groups and User Configurations for Oracle Database Appliance	A-3

## B Oracle Database Appliance Storage Defaults

---

About Database File Storage	B-1
Oracle ACFS Mount Points and Storage Space	B-2
Displaying Mounted Disk Details	B-4
Usable Space on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M	B-4
Usable Space on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA	B-5

## C Creating an Appliance Using JSON File

---

Loading and Saving Appliance Configurations	C-1
Readme for the Command <code>odacli create-appliance</code>	C-2
Example JSON Files to Create a Single Node Appliance with the CLI	C-2
Example JSON File to Create a Multi-Node Appliance with the CLI	C-7

## D Database Shapes for Oracle Database Appliance

---

About Database Shapes and Classes	D-1
Database Shapes for the OLTP Class	D-2
Database Shapes for the In-Memory Class	D-4
Database Shapes for the DSS Class	D-5

## Index

---

## List of Examples

---

4-1	Example of a Bonded Configuration	4-2
4-2	Example of a Non-Bonded Configuration	4-2
4-3	Example of Configuring VLAN	4-3
6-1	Options for the Secure Erase Tool	6-6
12-1	Command-Line Interface Syntax	12-3
12-2	SUDO Example 1: Allow a User to Perform Any ODACLI Operation	12-5
12-3	SUDO Example 2: Allow a User to Perform Only Selected ODACLI Operations	12-6
12-4	Configuring the First Network as a Bonded Network	12-8
12-5	Configuring the First Network as a Non-Bonded Network	12-8
12-6	Displaying a List of Networks	12-10
12-7	Displaying Network Details	12-10
12-8	Creating a Network	12-12
12-9	Creating a VLAN Network	12-12
12-10	Configuring the network after changing a network card	12-12
12-11	Changing a Network Interface	12-13
12-12	Updating a Network	12-13
12-13	Deleting a Network	12-14
12-14	Displaying Network Details	12-16
12-15	Displaying a List of Network Interfaces	12-16
12-16	Displaying Patch Details for Components for Oracle Database Appliance Release 19.518.5	12-19
12-17	List DB Home Details	12-21
12-18	List the Server Components and Versions	12-22
12-19	Listing the Latest Supported Versions	12-23
12-20	Creating Pre-Check Report	12-25
12-21	Displaying the Patch Pre-Checks Report	12-26
12-22	Example of a Successful Patch Pre-Checks Report	12-27
12-23	Displaying All Patch Pre-Checks Reports	12-29
12-24	Deleting RDBMS and GI components for a specific release	12-30
12-25	Deleting Clone Files	12-30
12-26	Displaying All Patch Pre-Checks Reports	12-31
12-27	Deleting A Patch Pre-Checks Report	12-32
12-28	Example Command	12-32
12-29	Setting Multiple Parameters	12-34
12-30	Updating an Oracle Database Home	12-35

12-31	Updating DCS Admin	12-36
12-32	Updating DCS Components	12-36
12-33	Updating the Agent	12-37
12-34	Updating the Registry with the -force option	12-38
12-35	Updating the Repository	12-40
12-36	Updating the Server	12-41
12-37	Running odaadmcli orachk	12-42
12-38	Running odaadmcli orachk for a component	12-43
12-39	Updating the Storage	12-43
12-40	Displaying Appliance Details	12-45
12-41	Example Command to View the Bill of Materials from the Command Line for Bare Metal Deployments	12-46
12-42	Example Command to View the Features Report from the Command Line	12-49
12-43	Resetting the oda-admin Password in Interactive Mode	12-51
12-44	Create a Manual Database Backup	12-54
12-45	Create a Level 0 Database Backup	12-54
12-46	Create a Backup Configuration for Disk	12-55
12-47	Create a Backup Configuration for NFS Location	12-55
12-48	Delete a Level 0 or Level 1 Backup	12-57
12-49	Delete a Long Term Backup Report	12-57
12-50	Deleting a Backup Configuration	12-58
12-51	Deleting the Oracle Object Store Credentials	12-58
12-52	Display Details of a Specific Backup Report	12-59
12-53	Display Schedule Details	12-60
12-54	Restoring a Database to the Same System	12-62
12-55	Restoring a Database to a Different System	12-62
12-56	Display a List of all Backup Reports	12-63
12-57	Displaying a List of Backup Configuration	12-64
12-58	Displaying a List of ObjectStore Swift Credentials	12-64
12-59	Display a List of Scheduled Database Backups	12-65
12-60	Recovering a Database to a Point-in-Time	12-66
12-61	Recovering a Database to the Latest	12-66
12-62	Recovering a Database to an SCN	12-66
12-63	Revise a Backup Configuration for Disk	12-67
12-64	Associating a Backup Configuration with a Database	12-68
12-65	Updating an Existing Database Using the Resource ID	12-68
12-66	Updating an Existing Database Using the Resource Name	12-68

12-67	Changing the Oracle Casper ObjectStore Password	12-69
12-68	Changing the Oracle ObjectStore User Name	12-70
12-69	Change What Time the Backup Occurs	12-70
12-70	Disable Scheduled Database Backups	12-70
12-71	Displaying a List of Cores	12-71
12-72	Displaying the Current Core Configuration	12-72
12-73	Enabling CPU Cores	12-73
12-74	Displaying a List of Databases	12-74
12-75	Displaying Database Details	12-75
12-76	Creating a Database in Interactive Mode	12-78
12-77	Creating a Database Against a Different Version	12-79
12-78	Cloning a Database	12-80
12-79	Moving a Database from one Oracle home to another	12-81
12-80	Modifying the Database Shape (Template) and Database Class	12-81
12-81	Moving and Resizing a Database	12-81
12-82	Registering a Migrated Database	12-83
12-83	Upgrading an Oracle Database	12-85
12-84	Deleting a Database Named hrmsdb	12-86
12-85	Displaying a List of Oracle Home Directories	12-88
12-86	Displaying Oracle Database Home Details	12-89
12-87	Creating an Oracle Database Home	12-90
12-88	Deleting an Empty Database Home	12-90
12-89	Displaying a List of all Database Storage	12-91
12-90	Displaying Database Oracle ACFS Storage Details	12-92
12-91	Displaying Database Oracle ASM Storage Details	12-93
12-92	Creating Database Storage	12-94
12-93	Deleting Empty Database Storage	12-95
12-94	Displaying Disk Group Storage	12-96
12-95	Displaying Disk Group Storage	12-98
12-96	Displaying a List of Jobs	12-101
12-97	Displaying Specified Number of Older Jobs	12-101
12-98	Displaying Jobs in a Date Range	12-101
12-99	Displaying Details for a Job	12-103
12-100	Displaying a List of Scheduled and Executed Jobs	12-104
12-101	Masking Sensitive Data in Log Collection	12-106
12-102	Displaying a List of Logs	12-107
12-103	Creating Jobs to Purge Logs	12-108

12-104	Listing Jobs to Purge Logs	12-110
12-105	Displaying Log Cleanup Jobs	12-110
12-106	Creating Automatic Jobs to Purge Logs	12-111
12-107	Listing Jobs to Purge Logs	12-112
12-108	Configuring Oracle ASR with a Proxy Server	12-114
12-109	Configuring an External Oracle ASR	12-114
12-110	Updating Oracle ASR with a New Proxy Server	12-116
12-111	Displaying Oracle ASR Details	12-116
12-112	Testing the Oracle ASR Configuration	12-117
12-113	Deleting Oracle ASR From the System	12-118
12-114	Displaying a List of Configured and Suggested Memlock and HugePage Configurations	12-119
12-115	Updating the HugePage and Memlock Parameters to the Suggested Values	12-120
12-116	Displaying Environment and Hardware Details	12-122
12-117	Displaying Filesystem Details	12-123
12-118	Display Memory Details	12-123
12-119	Showing Network Details	12-124
12-120	Displaying Power Supply Details	12-125
12-121	Displaying Processor Details	12-126
12-122	Displaying Server Details	12-126
12-123	Displaying the Status of All Disks	12-129
12-124	Displaying the Status of a Single Disk	12-129
12-125	Listing All Diskgroups	12-130
12-126	Displaying DATA Configurations	12-131
12-127	Showing Controller Details	12-131
12-128	Displaying the RAID SYNC Status	12-132
12-129	Displaying Storage Devices	12-133
12-130	Displaying NVMe Details	12-134
12-131	Powering a Disk Off	12-134
12-132	Checking the Disk Status	12-135
13-1	Example Command to View the Bill of Materials from the Command Line for Bare Metal Deployments	13-2
13-2	Example Command to View the Bill of Materials from the Command Line for Virtualized Platforms	13-4
13-3	Example Command to View the Bill of Materials Report from the Stored Location	13-5
13-4	Collecting log file information for a time period, masking sensitive data	13-19
B-1	Oracle ACFS Storage Space	B-3
B-2	Determining Storage on the DATA Disk Group	B-4

C-1	JSON File to Create a Single Node Oracle Database Appliance with Role Separation	C-3
C-2	JSON File to Create a Single Node Oracle Database Appliance without Role Separation	C-5
C-3	JSON File to Create a Multi-Node Oracle Database Appliance with Role Separation	C-8

## List of Figures

---

3-1	Front of Oracle Database Appliance Power Panel	3-8
-----	--	-----



## List of Tables

---

1-1	Checklist for System Configuration Information for Oracle Database Appliance	1-1
1-2	Deployment Checklist for Baremetal Installations	1-6
1-3	Default IP Address Requirements for Oracle Database Appliance	1-8
2-1	Software for Oracle Database Appliance	2-3
3-1	Location of Network Ports and Power Cabling for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA	3-2
3-2	Location of Ports and Power Cabling for Oracle Database Appliance	3-2
3-3	Transceivers for the SFP Ports - 10GB/1GB	3-3
3-4	Transceivers for the SFP Ports - 25GB	3-3
3-5	Networking Cables for the SFP Ports - 10GB/1GB	3-3
3-6	Networking Cables for the SFP Ports - 25GB	3-4
3-7	Location of Network Ports and Power Cabling for Oracle Database Appliance	3-5
3-8	Description of Callouts for Powering On Oracle Database Appliance	3-8
6-1	Command Options for Cleanup Utility	6-2
7-1	Operating System Groups and Users on Oracle Database Appliance	7-2
8-1	Storage Options for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M	8-2
8-2	Storage Options for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA	8-8
13-1	Command Options for tfactl Tool	13-9
A-1	Default Operating System Groups and Users Configuration for Oracle Database Appliance	A-3
B-1	Oracle ACFS Mount Points and Related Oracle ASM Disk Groups and Volume Information	B-3
B-2	Usable Disk Capacity on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M	B-4
B-3	Usable Disk Capacity for High Performance on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA	B-5
B-4	Usable Disk Capacity for High Capacity on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA	B-7
B-5	Oracle ASM Calculations	B-7
B-6	Definition of Terminology	B-8
D-1	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S OLTP Database Shapes	D-3
D-2	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M OLTP Database Shapes	D-3
D-3	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA OLTP Database Shapes	D-3
D-4	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S In-Memory Database Shapes	D-4
D-5	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M and X7-2-HA In-Memory Database Shapes	D-4
D-6	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S DSS Database Shapes	D-5
D-7	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M and X7-2-HA DSS Database Shapes	D-6

# Preface

Oracle Database Appliance is an optimized, prebuilt database system that is easy to deploy, operate, and manage. By integrating hardware and software, Oracle Database Appliance eliminates the complexities of nonintegrated, manually assembled solutions. Oracle Database Appliance reduces the installation and software deployment times from weeks or months to just a few hours while preventing configuration and setup errors that often result in suboptimal, hard-to-manage database environments.

- [Audience](#)
- [Documentation Accessibility](#)
- [Related Documents](#)
- [Conventions](#)

## Audience

This guide is intended for anyone who configures, maintains, or uses Oracle Database Appliance:

- System administrators
- Network administrators
- Database administrators
- Application administrators and users

This book does not include information about Oracle Database architecture, tools, management, or application development that is covered in the main body of Oracle Documentation, unless the information provided is specific to Oracle Database Appliance. Users of Oracle Database Appliance software are expected to have the same skills as users of any other Linux-based Oracle Database installations.

## Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>.

### Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info> or visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs> if you are hearing impaired.

## Related Documents

For more information about Oracle Database Appliance, go to <http://www.oracle.com/goto/oda/docs> and click the appropriate release. The following documents are published in the Oracle Database Appliance online documentation library:

- *Oracle Database Appliance Release Notes*
- *Oracle Database Appliance Licensing Information User Manual*
- *Oracle Database Appliance Security Guide*
- *Oracle Database Appliance Accessibility Guide*
- *Oracle Database Appliance X8-2 Deployment and User's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Appliance X7-2 Deployment and User's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Appliance X6-2-HA Deployment and User's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Appliance X6-2S/M/L Deployment and User's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Appliance X5-2/X4-2 Deployment and User's Guide*
- Oracle Database Appliance Setup Posters and Booklets (a full-size printed copy ships with Oracle Database Appliance)
- *Oracle Database Appliance Owner's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Appliance Service Manual*
- *Oracle Database Appliance Series Safety and Compliance Guide*

For more information about using Oracle Database, go to <http://docs.oracle.com/en/database/> and select the database release from the menu. See the following documents in the Oracle Database online documentation library:

- *Oracle Database Security Guide*
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Quick Reference*
- *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery Reference*
- *Oracle Database Utilities*
- *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide*

For more information about Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager 3.2, see [https://docs.oracle.com/cd/E37444\\_01/](https://docs.oracle.com/cd/E37444_01/).

For more details about other Oracle products that are mentioned in Oracle Database Appliance documentation, see the Oracle Documentation home page at <http://docs.oracle.com>.

## Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

<b>Convention</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
<b>boldface</b>	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action or terms defined in the text.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
monospace	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.
# prompt	The pound (#) prompt indicates a command that is run as the root user.

# 1

## Oracle Database Appliance Checklists

Use these checklists to ensure you have completed the tasks required for setting up, deploying, and patching Oracle Database Appliance.

- [Checklist for System Requirements](#)  
Before you begin the deployment, ensure that you have the system information described in this checklist ready. This checklist applies to baremetal and virtualized platform deployments.
- [Deployment Checklist for Oracle Database Appliance Bare Metal Installations](#)  
This checklist provides an overview of the tasks to setup and deploy Oracle Database Appliance for the first time.
- [Checklist for Custom Network Address Configuration](#)  
Use the checklist to identify the IP addresses required for Oracle Database Appliance.

### Checklist for System Requirements

Before you begin the deployment, ensure that you have the system information described in this checklist ready. This checklist applies to baremetal and virtualized platform deployments.

**Table 1-1 Checklist for System Configuration Information for Oracle Database Appliance**

Component	Information Required	Comments
Host Name	The name for the Oracle Database Appliance System. The name must conform with the RFC 952 standard, which allows alphanumeric characters and hyphens ( - ), but does not allow underscores ( _ ). The name should not begin with a numeral or hyphen and should not end in a hyphen. Oracle recommends that you use all lowercase characters for the host name.	Use this space to note the values for your appliance. Host Name:
Domain Name	Your domain name. For example: <code>example.com</code>	Domain Name:
Region	The region where you plan to operate the Oracle Database Appliance system.	Region:

**Table 1-1 (Cont.) Checklist for System Configuration Information for Oracle Database Appliance**

Component	Information Required	Comments
Timezone	The time zone where you plan to operate the Oracle Database Appliance system.	Timezone:
Diskgroup Redundancy	Determine the redundancy level for DATA, RECO, and FLASH:  If there are up to two disks, then you can select the disk group redundancy as Normal or Flex. If there are more than two disk drives, then you can select the redundancy as Normal (two way mirror), High (three way mirror), or Flex. If you select High redundancy, then DATA, RECO, and FLASH are all High Redundancy.	Use this space to note the values for your appliance.
Number of Enabled CPU Cores	Based on your capacity-on-demand (CoD) license, this value specifies the number of enabled CPU cores	Use this space to note the values for your appliance.
Backup	Determine the backup location. For external backup, you need an NFS device.	Backup location:
Percentage of Storage Reserved for Data	Determine the amount of reserves for DATA storage. The percentage must be a whole number between 10 and 90, and determines how the disks are partitioned between DATA and RECO. For example, if you specify 80, then 80% of storage is reserved for DATA and the remaining 20% is for RECO.	Use this space to note the values for your appliance.
System Password	The password set for the root user of the system, operating system users, database users, and pdbadmin. The password is also used to set the database SYS and SYSTEM passwords. Ensure that the password you provide is in compliance with common security practices.	Use this space to note the values for your appliance.
DNS Server	(Optional) DNS server details. If configuring DNS, a minimum of one DNS Server IP is required.	DNS Server details:

**Table 1-1 (Cont.) Checklist for System Configuration Information for Oracle Database Appliance**

Component	Information Required	Comments
NTP Server	(Optional) Network Time Protocol (NTP) server details.	NTP Server details:
Network Information for the client access network	<p>Obtain the following network information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Node 0 Name: such as example0</li> <li>• Node 0 Public IP Address</li> <li>• Node 1 Name (For HA Models): such as example1</li> <li>• Node 1 Public IP Address (For HA Models)</li> <li>• Node 0 Virtual IP Name (For HA Models): for example, example0-vip</li> <li>• Node 0 Public Virtual IP Address (For HA Models)</li> <li>• Node 1 Virtual IP Name (For HA Models): for example, example1-vip</li> <li>• Node 1 Public Virtual IP Address (For HA Models)</li> <li>• SCAN Name (For HA Models): for example, example-scan</li> <li>• SCAN IP Addresses: Two SCAN IP addresses are required</li> <li>• Netmask</li> <li>• Gateway IP</li> </ul> <p>Obtain the following additional network information for virtualized platforms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• OVM Node0 Dom0 Host Name</li> <li>• OVM Node0 Dom0 IP Address</li> <li>• OVM Node1 Dom0 Host Name</li> <li>• OVM Node1 Dom0 IP Address</li> </ul>	Use this space to note the values for your appliance.

**Table 1-1 (Cont.) Checklist for System Configuration Information for Oracle Database Appliance**

Component	Information Required	Comments
Network Information for the Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager (ILOM) network	<p>Obtain the following ILOM network information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ILOM host name</li> <li>• ILOM IP address</li> <li>• Subnet mask</li> <li>• Gateway IP</li> <li>• ILOM Password: default is changeme.</li> </ul> <p>For HA systems, ensure that you have the information to configure two ILOM networks.</p>	Use this space to note the values for your appliance.
User and group information	<p>Determine how you want to configure your users and groups and whether or not you want to allow operating system role separation. The default is two users with six groups.</p> <p>Operating System Role Separation: Yes/No</p> <p>Customization of Users and Groups: Yes/No</p> <p>Groups and IDs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Grid Infrastructure User</li> <li>• Grid Infrastructure User ID</li> <li>• Database User</li> <li>• Database User ID</li> <li>• Install Group</li> <li>• Install Group ID</li> <li>• DBA Operating System Group</li> <li>• DBA Operating System Group ID</li> <li>• ASM Admin Group</li> <li>• ASM Admin Group ID</li> <li>• ASM Operating System Group</li> <li>• ASM Operating System Group ID</li> <li>• ASM DBA Group</li> <li>• ASM DBA Group ID</li> </ul>	Use this space to note the values for your appliance.



**Table 1-1 (Cont.) Checklist for System Configuration Information for Oracle Database Appliance**

Component	Information Required	Comments
Initial Database Details (if you want to create one during deployment)	<p>(Optional) If you choose to create an initial database during deployment, determine the following configuration details:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Database name</li> <li>• Database unique name</li> <li>• Database version (based on the database clones that are registered with the Oracle Database Appliance)</li> <li>• Determine the Oracle Database edition licensing that you have, either Enterprise Edition or Standard Edition. You cannot mix editions.</li> <li>• Database deployment, whether Oracle RAC or single-instance database</li> <li>• CDB (Container Database): Yes or No</li> <li>• PDB name</li> <li>• Shape (for example, odb1, odb2, and so on)</li> <li>• Database Class: Enterprise Edition, OLTP, DSS, or IMDB. Standard Edition OLTP only.</li> <li>• Data files on Flash storage: Yes/No</li> <li>• Database file size</li> <li>• Database character set</li> <li>• National character set</li> <li>• Database language</li> <li>• Storage (Oracle ASM or Oracle ACFS). 11.2.0.4 databases are supported only on Oracle ACFS storage.</li> <li>• Database redundancy</li> <li>• Configure Oracle Enterprise Manager console. If you are using Enterprise Manager Cloud Control with this appliance, do not choose this option.</li> <li>• Password for the database</li> </ul> <p>The DB Name and DB Unique name can contain</p>	Use this space to note the values for your appliance.

**Table 1-1 (Cont.) Checklist for System Configuration Information for Oracle Database Appliance**

Component	Information Required	Comments
	alphanumeric characters and must start with an alphabet. It can contain underscores ( _ ), but cannot contain characters such as "!@%^&*()+=\\ `~[{}];:~", <>/?".	
Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR) information	(Optional) Do you want to configure and enable Oracle ASR at deployment or later? If required, then ensure that you have the following information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ASR Type</li> <li>• ASR User Name</li> <li>• ASR Password</li> <li>• SNMP Version</li> <li>• Proxy Server Name</li> <li>• Proxy Port</li> <li>• Proxy User Name</li> <li>• Proxy Password</li> </ul>	Use this space to note the values for your appliance.
Information for Virtualized Platform Deployments Only	Base Memory: Memory allocated to the ODA_BASE domain.	Use this space to note your values.

## Deployment Checklist for Oracle Database Appliance Bare Metal Installations

This checklist provides an overview of the tasks to setup and deploy Oracle Database Appliance for the first time.

**Table 1-2 Deployment Checklist for Baremetal Installations**

Component	Tasks
Register your hardware Support Identifier (SI)	Add your hardware Support Identifier (SI) to your My Oracle Support account profile. Your hardware SI is supplied when you purchase Oracle Database Appliance. If you acquire new software licenses, then you must also register your new software SIs. The SI registration process can take up to 24 hours to complete.
Connect to Oracle Database Appliance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plug in the hardware, and then wait for the SP light to become solid green. Do not power up yet.</li> <li>• If there is no video port available on your Oracle Database Appliance hardware model, then use the Server Management Serial Port to connect to a laptop, or determine the DHCP address assigned to it. <b>Note:</b> Serial port must be set to 115200, so make sure the baud rate speed matches.</li> </ul>

**Table 1-2 (Cont.) Deployment Checklist for Baremetal Installations**

Component	Tasks
Configure Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager (Oracle ILOM) on Node0 and Node1	<p>Before you configure Oracle ILOM, ensure that you have following information available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A name and IP address</li> <li>• A password to replace the default Oracle ILOM password</li> <li>• Access to a management network, using an assigned netmask</li> <li>• An Ethernet cable connected from the NET MGT port to the management network</li> </ul> <p>Log into the Oracle ILOM console and follow the procedure in the topic <i>Configuring Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager</i>.</p>
Power ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Power on each node and log in as root user with welcome1 password.</li> <li>• Verify cabling: # /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli validate-storagetopology</li> <li>• Verify interconnect networking. Run the commands # ethtool plp1 and # ethtool plp2.</li> </ul> <p>Follow the steps described in the topic <i>Verifying Cabling and Network Connections</i>.</p>
Plumb the network	<p>Ensure that you have recorded the IP address and netmask address.</p> <p>Set up a temporary network connection to Oracle Database Appliance. Use the command <code>odacli configure-firstnet</code> on Node0, for both single- and multi-node systems.</p> <p>Log into the Oracle ILOM console and follow the procedure in the topic <i>Plumbing the Network</i>.</p>
Download Oracle Database Appliance Software	<p>Log into My Oracle Support and download the software files for deployment. Refer to the <i>Oracle Database Appliance Release Notes</i> for the latest software.</p>
Install Oracle Database Appliance	<p>Upload the zip files to a temporary location on Oracle Database Appliance and then update the repository and install the software.</p> <p>Follow the steps and run the commands described in the topic <i>Installing Oracle Database Appliance Software</i>.</p>
Create Appliance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set the Web Console password for the oda-admin user.</li> <li>• Log into the Web Console and configure system, network, and users and groups.</li> </ul> <p>Ensure that you have the information mentioned in <i>Checklist for System Requirements</i> available to you.</p> <p>Follow the steps described in the topic <i>Creating an Appliance</i>.</p>
Perform postinstallation tasks	<p>Configure CPU core count.</p> <p>Change the passwords for Web Console, Oracle users and groups, and Oracle ILOM.</p> <p>Follow the steps described in the chapter <i>Oracle Database Appliance Postinstallation Tasks</i>.</p>
Cleanup Deployments	<p>If your deployment failed for some reason, then run the cleanup script and redeploy the appliance.</p> <p>For steps to run the cleanup script, see the topic <i>Running the Cleanup Script for Incomplete or Failed Installations</i>.</p>

### Related Topics

- [Verifying Cabling and Network Connections](#)  
After powering on Oracle Database Appliance, verify that the network connections are set up correctly.
- [Configuring Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager](#)  
Configure Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager (Oracle ILOM) to manage Oracle Database Appliance independent of the operating system.
- [Plumbing the Network](#)  
Plumb the Oracle Database Appliance network with the public internet protocol (IP) information assigned to a node, to enable provisioning of the Oracle Database Appliance software.
- [Installing Oracle Database Appliance Software](#)  
Install Oracle Database Appliance software, before creating the appliance.
- [Creating the Appliance](#)  
Create the appliance using the Web Console.
- [Oracle Database Appliance Postinstallation Tasks](#)  
Complete these administrative tasks after you have deployed software, but before the system is operational.
- [Cleaning Up Incomplete or Failed Installations](#)  
Use the Oracle Database Appliance cleanup deploy utility, `/opt/oracle/oak/onecmd/cleanup.pl` to uninstall Oracle Database Appliance components.

## Checklist for Custom Network Address Configuration

Use the checklist to identify the IP addresses required for Oracle Database Appliance.

### Note:

Oracle does not recommend changing the default Host Private Address. You cannot change the private network after deploying the appliance.

**Table 1-3 Default IP Address Requirements for Oracle Database Appliance**

Type of IP	IP Address Default Values	Your Values As Applicable
Client Access Network	No default	No default
Additional Network	No default	No default
Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager (ILOM)	No default	No default
Host Private Addresses	InfiniBand has bonded interface <code>ibbond0</code> . The system configures <code>icbond0</code> on non-InfiniBand High-Availability systems. The subnet <code>192.168.16.0/24</code> is configured.	Not applicable: the private addresses are defined before deployment and should not be changed

# 2

## Introduction to Oracle Database Appliance

Oracle Database Appliance saves time and money by simplifying deployment, maintenance, and support of database solutions for organizations of every size. Oracle Database Appliance hardware models are optimized to run Oracle Database Standard Edition and Enterprise Edition.

- [About Oracle Database Appliance](#)  
Understand Oracle Database Appliance hardware models, deployment plans, and database options.
- [Oracle Database Appliance Software Terminology](#)  
Understand the software patches available for Oracle Database Appliance.
- [About the Web Console](#)  
Use the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to deploy and manage the appliance, databases, networks, and jobs.

### About Oracle Database Appliance

Understand Oracle Database Appliance hardware models, deployment plans, and database options.

#### About Oracle Database Appliance Hardware Models

Choose the Oracle Database Appliance hardware model that suits your business needs.

Oracle Database Appliance Hardware Model	Deployment Use Case
Oracle Database Appliance X8-2S, X8-2M, X8-2-HA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Oracle Database Appliance X8-2S is a small configuration designed for smaller or entry-level deployments.</li><li>• Oracle Database Appliance X8-2M is a medium-sized configuration designed for performance.</li><li>• Oracle Database Appliance X8-2-HA is a large configuration designed for larger databases and high-availability.</li></ul>
Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S, X7-2M, X7-2-HA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S is a small configuration designed for smaller or entry-level deployments.</li><li>• Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M is a medium-sized configuration designed for performance.</li><li>• Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA is a large configuration designed for larger databases and high-availability.</li></ul>

Oracle Database Appliance Hardware Model	Deployment Use Case
Oracle Database Appliance X6-2S, X6-2M, X6-2L	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oracle Database Appliance X6-2S is a small configuration designed for smaller or entry-level deployments.</li> <li>• Oracle Database Appliance X6-2M is a medium-sized configuration designed for performance.</li> <li>• Oracle Database Appliance X6-2L is a large configuration designed for larger databases.</li> </ul>
Oracle Database Appliance X6-2-HA	Highly-available two-node Oracle RAC clusters that can support both Oracle RAC and single-instance databases.
Oracle Database Appliance X5-2 and X4-2	Highly-available two-node Oracle RAC clusters that can support both Oracle RAC and single-instance databases.

You cannot expand or reconfigure Oracle Database Appliance to a different configuration. For example, you cannot expand Oracle Database Appliance X7-S to Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M. For Oracle Database Appliance hardware configuration details, see the *Oracle Database Appliance Owner's Guide*.

### About Oracle Database Appliance Deployment Plans

Oracle Database Appliance X8-2S and X8-2M are single node systems that you deploy as a bare metal platform.

Oracle Database Appliance X8-2-HA is a two-node system with the option to deploy as a bare metal platform or a virtualized platform.

Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M are single node systems that you deploy as a bare metal platform.

Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA is a two-node system with the option to deploy as a bare metal platform or a virtualized platform.

Oracle Database Appliance X6-2S, X6-2M, X6-2L are single node systems that you deploy as a bare metal platform.

Oracle Database Appliance X6-2-HA is a two-node system with the option to deploy as a bare metal platform or a virtualized platform. Starting with with Oracle Database Appliance release 19.5, systems deployed as bare metal are migrated from oakcli to odacli (the DCS software stack). Virtualized systems continue to use the oakcli software stack.

Oracle Database Appliance X5-2 and X4-2 are two-node systems with the option to deploy as a bare metal platform or a virtualized platform. Starting with with Oracle Database Appliance release 19.5, systems deployed as bare metal are migrated from oakcli to odacli (the DCS software stack). Virtualized systems continue to use the oakcli software stack.

### About Database Deployment Options for Oracle Database Appliance

The following Oracle Database editions are available:

Database Edition	Supported Releases	Description
Oracle Database Enterprise Edition	Oracle Database Release 18c, 12.2.0.1, 12.1.0.2, and 11.2.0.4	Supports Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) and single-instance Oracle Databases.
Oracle Database Standard Edition Two	Oracle Database Release 18c, 12.2.0.1, 12.1.0.2, and 11.2.0.4	Supports Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC), Oracle RAC One, and single-instance Oracle Databases.
Oracle Database Standard Edition One	Oracle Database Release 11.2.0.4	Supports Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC), Oracle RAC One, and single-instance Oracle Databases.
Oracle Database Standard Edition	Oracle Database Release 11.2.0.4	Supports Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC), Oracle RAC One, and single-instance Oracle Databases.

 **Note:**

It is important to understand your Oracle Database licensing before you create databases. You cannot provision Oracle Database Enterprise Edition and Standard Edition databases in the same bare metal platform, or the same ODA\_BASE virtualized deployment, subject to Oracle Database licensing requirements. Review the Database Licensing Information User Manual for the Oracle Database release to review supported options and products.

## Oracle Database Appliance Software Terminology

Understand the software patches available for Oracle Database Appliance.

The table describes the Oracle Database Appliance patches that are available for download and the purpose of the patch.

 **Note:**

Some hardware models may not use the patches listed in the table.

**Table 2-1 Software for Oracle Database Appliance**

Patch	Description
Oracle Database Appliance patch bundle (quarterly patch release)	Use the patch bundle to update to the latest release after Oracle Database Appliance is deployed. The patch updates the Oracle Database Appliance server, storage, and database components.

Table 2-1 (Cont.) Software for Oracle Database Appliance

Patch	Description
Oracle Database Appliance GI/ RDBMS Clone	Use to perform an initial deployment of Oracle Database Appliance. The bundle contains the latest Grid Infrastructure and RDBMS components, Oracle Database Appliance Manager software, Oracle Linux and hardware drivers for deployment on an Oracle Database Appliance that is shipped from factory state. If you reimage Oracle Database Appliance with the Bare Metal ISO Image, download the GI/RDBMS Clone patch to deploy Oracle Database Appliance.
RDBMS Clone	Use the RDBMS Software Clone files to get the latest RDBMS clone binaries for Oracle Database releases 18c, 12.2.0.1, 12.1.0.2, and 11.2.0.4. The RDBMS clone files are needed to create Oracle databases and database homes.
Bare Metal ISO Image	Use to reimage the appliance and reset the system back to the factory configuration.
VM ISO Image (DOM0) (Virtualized Platform ISO Image)	Use to re-image Oracle Database Appliance before deploying the ODA_Base Template and virtualized platform. The Oracle Database Appliance virtualized operating system image contains the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oracle Database Appliance Manager oakcli command-line interface</li> <li>• Oracle Database Appliance Manager Configurator</li> <li>• Oracle Linux</li> <li>• Hardware drivers</li> </ul> Required for Virtualized Platform deployments on multi-node high availability (HA) systems.
ODA_BASE Template (Virtualization Template)	Use to create the ODA_Base virtual machine for a virtualized database appliance. The template contains the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oracle Virtual Machine template</li> <li>• Oracle Database clone binaries</li> <li>• Oracle Database templates, customized for Oracle Database Appliance deployments</li> <li>• Oracle Grid Infrastructure clone binaries</li> </ul> Required for Virtualized Platform deployments on multi-node HA systems.

**Note:**

See the *Oracle Database Appliance Release Notes* for the patch numbers and download locations and the component versions available in the patch bundle.



 **Note:**

Starting with Oracle Database 18c, Oracle provides quarterly updates in the form of Release Updates (Updates) and Release Update Revisions (Revisions). Oracle no longer releases patch sets. For more information, see My Oracle Support Note 2285040.1.

Oracle Database releases are of type `version` and `version_full` releases. The `version` release is designated in the form `major release version.0.0.0.0`. The major release version is based on the last two digits of the year in which an Oracle Database version is released for the first time. The `version_full` release is an update of a version release and is designated based on the major release version, the quarterly release update version (Update), and the quarterly release update revision version (Revision).

Prior to Oracle Database release 18c, changing the first or second digit in the release number was an upgrade, and changing the fourth digit indicated an update. With 18c and later releases, changing the first digit is an upgrade, and changing the second indicates an update.

## About the Web Console

Use the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to deploy and manage the appliance, databases, networks, and jobs.

The Web Console provides a user-friendly interface to quickly view and perform many of the tasks needed to deploy, patch, and manage your bare metal system. The *Oracle Database Appliance Deployment and User's Guide* for your hardware model describes how to use the Web Console to perform many of the tasks related to deployment, patching, and management of your appliance.

Use the links in the side navigation to view and manage the following:

- **Appliance**
  - Appliance information
  - System information
  - Disk group information including storage utilization such as free and used space
  - Information about all databases that use a storage disk group
  - All the patches and hardware and software components installed on the appliance
  - List of RPMs and RPM Drift information
- **Network**
  - View network details
  - Create, update, and delete networks
  - View interface details
- **Oracle ASR**

- View Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR) configuration details
- Configure, update, test, and delete Oracle ASR
- **Patch Manager**
  - Update the patch repository with Oracle Database Appliance patches
  - View component details of the patch and versions that are installed on the appliance
  - View component details of the patch and versions that are available, but not yet installed, on the appliance
  - Run patch prechecks before applying the patch
  - Update the server and storage components

Use the links in the top navigation to view and manage the following:

- **Database**
  - Create a database
  - View database details
  - Apply a backup policy for the database
  - Create a manual backup
  - Recover a database from a backup
  - View and update the database backup schedule and update the archive log backup schedule for the database
  - Create, update, and delete backup policies
  - Create, update, and delete database homes
  - Create and delete database backup
  - Clone a database from a database backup or an Oracle ACFS database snapshot
  - Patch database homes
- **Object Store**
  - Create Object Store Credentials for backup and recovery
  - View the details for Object Store Credentials, including the endpoint URL, user name, and tenant
  - Update and delete Object Store Credentials
- **Monitoring**
  - View the status of hardware, storage, memory, cooling, networking, and power
  - View monitoring information for each node, in the case of High-Availability deployments
  - View system health status and drilldown to details of incidents
  - Click the hardware image to view details
- **Activity**
  - View a list of jobs, details, and status
  - Click a job description to view job details

### Update ILOM and User Settings

Expand **About** in the upper right corner of the Web Console to perform the following tasks:

- Click **About** to view the Oracle Database Appliance release that is installed on the appliance.
- Click **Update ILOM Setting** to change the root password. To enable first-time login and access to Oracle ILOM, a default Administrator (root) account and its password are provided with the system.
- Click **Update User Settings** to change the `oda-admin` password.
- Click **Sign Out** to sign out of the Web Console. If you do not sign out, the system automatically signs you out after a period of inactivity. A warning will appear 2 minutes before the session expires.

# 3

## Readying Oracle Database Appliance for Deployment

Before deploying Oracle Database Appliance, perform these setup tasks.

- [Attaching Network and Storage Cables to Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA](#)  
Connect Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA to either a 10GBase-T (copper) or 25GbE SFP28 (fiber) network.
- [Attaching Network Cables to Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S or X7-2M](#)  
Connect Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S or X7-2M to either a 10GBase-T (copper) or 25GbE SFP28 (fiber) network.
- [Attaching Power Cords and Initializing Components](#)  
Attach power cords for Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Configuring Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager](#)  
Configure Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager (Oracle ILOM) to manage Oracle Database Appliance independent of the operating system.
- [Powering On Oracle Database Appliance the First Time](#)  
Use this procedure the first time you power on Oracle Database Appliance.

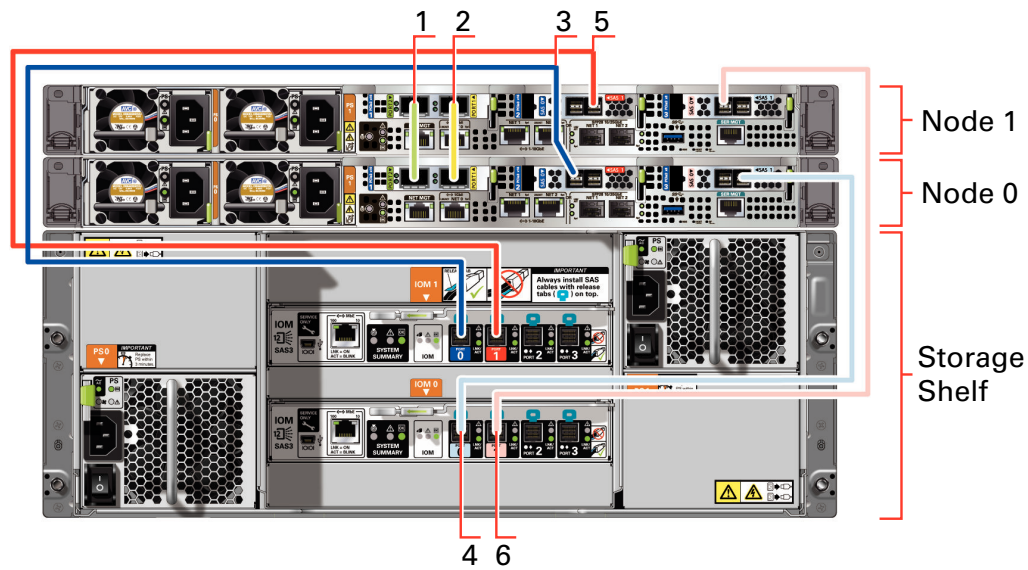
### Attaching Network and Storage Cables to Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA

Connect Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA to either a 10GBase-T (copper) or 25GbE SFP28 (fiber) network.

The SFP28 ports support 10Gb and 25Gb fibre and twinaxial cable (twinax), depending on the SFP modules used in these ports. For 10GBase-T public networking, use the Cat-6 network cables. To use the SFP28 ports, use the correct transceivers and cables to meet your switch bandwidth. The following sections show the cabling options for 25GbE SFP28 (fiber) network ports. In the figures, callout 4 identifies the ports for the 10GBase-T (copper) network. Callout 5 identifies the ports for the 25GbE SFP28 (fiber) network.

#### **Connect the Fiber and Copper Network Cables for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA**

Connect the network cables for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA.

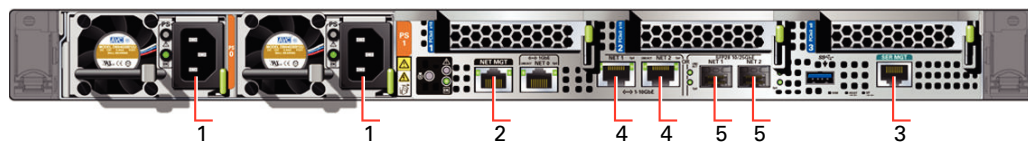


### Location of Network Ports and Power Cabling

**Table 3-1 Location of Network Ports and Power Cabling for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA**

Callout Number	Description
1	Interconnect Port 25GbE p1p1
2	Interconnect Port 25GbE p1p2
3	Dark blue SAS cable between PCIe slot 2 in Node0 (SAS0) and the dark blue port in the top IO module in the storage shelf (port0)
4	Light blue SAS cable between PCIe slot 3 in Node0 (SAS1) and the light blue port in the bottom IO module in the storage shelf (port0)
5	Dark red SAS cable between PCIe slot 2 in Node1 (SAS1) and the dark red port in the top IO module in the storage shelf (port1)
6	Light red SAS cable between PCIe slot 3 in Node1 (SAS0) and the light red port in the bottom IO module in the storage shelf (port1)

### Connect the Fiber and Copper Network Cables for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2



**Table 3-2 Location of Ports and Power Cabling for Oracle Database Appliance**

Callout Number	Description
1	Power cables to the power supply unit (PSU)
2	ILOM NET MGT port. Service processor 10/100/1000Base-T network interface

**Table 3-2 (Cont.) Location of Ports and Power Cabling for Oracle Database Appliance**

Callout Number	Description
3	(Optional) ILOM SER MGT port. Service processor RJ-45 serial port
4	10 GbE network interface port with RJ-45 connector (btbond1)
5	(Optional) 25 GbE dual-rate SFP28 (fiber network) ports (btbond1). Use either one of the ports: RJ-45 connector port or the SFP28 (fiber network) ports.

### Fiber Cables

For optical cables, you must purchase either Short Range (SR) or Long Range (LR) SFP transceivers for each of the network ports, and then plug in the appropriate optical cable. Currently, Oracle sells both the SR and LR SFP transceivers. In addition to these transceivers, you must purchase the appropriate LC-LC terminated fiber optic cables from a third-party vendor.

**Table 3-3 Transceivers for the SFP Ports - 10GB/1GB**

Name	Part Number
10Gbps Dual Rate SFP SR Transceiver	2129A
10Gbps SFP LR Transceiver	5562A-Z

**Table 3-4 Transceivers for the SFP Ports - 25GB**

Name	Part Number
SFP short range Transceiver	7118017
SFP long range Transceiver	7118020

### Copper Cables

You can purchase the following copper cables from Oracle. These cables have built-in SFP connectors.

**Table 3-5 Networking Cables for the SFP Ports - 10GB/1GB**

Name	Length	Part Number
TwinAx passive copper cable: 1 meter	1m	7105137
TwinAx passive copper cable: 3 meter	3m	7105140
TwinAx passive copper cable: 5 meter	5m	7151141

**Table 3-6 Networking Cables for the SFP Ports - 25GB**

Name	Length	Part Number
Copper splitter cable assembly: 1 meter QSFP28 to 4 SFP28	1m	7118355
Copper splitter cable assembly: 2 meter QSFP28 to 4 SFP28	2m	7118356
Copper splitter cable assembly: 3 meter QSFP28 to 4 SFP28	3m	7118357
Copper splitter cable assembly: 5 meter QSFP28 to 4 SFP28	5m	7118358
TwinAx passive copper cable: 1 meter	1m	7118359
TwinAx passive copper cable: 3 meter	2m	7118360
TwinAx passive copper cable: 5 meter	3m	7118361
TwinAx passive copper cable: 5 meter	5m	7118362

## Attaching Network Cables to Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S or X7-2M

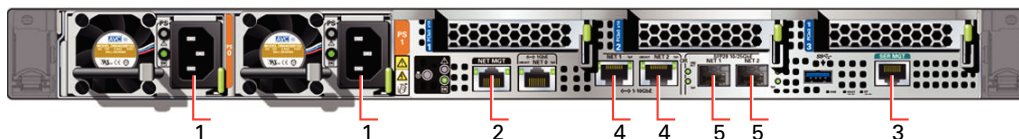
Connect Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S or X7-2M to either a 10GBase-T (copper) or 25GbE SFP28 (fiber) network.

The SFP28 ports support 10Gb and 25Gb fibre and twinaxial cable (twinax), depending on the SFP modules used in these ports. Use standard Cat-6 network cables to connect to the on-board 10GBase-T (copper) network ports.

The following sections show the cabling options for 25GbE SFP28 (fiber) network ports. In the figures, callout 4 identifies the ports for the 10GBase-T (copper) network and callout 5 identifies the ports for the 25GbE SFP28 (fiber) network.

### Connect the Fiber and Copper Network Cables for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S or X7-2M

Connect the Fiber and Copper Network Cables for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S or X7-2M



## Location of Network Ports and Power Cabling

**Table 3-7 Location of Network Ports and Power Cabling for Oracle Database Appliance**

Callout Number	Description
1	Power cables to the power supply unit (PSU)
2	ILOM NET MGT port. Service processor 10/100/1000Base-T network interface
3	(Optional) ILOM SER MGT port. Service processor RJ-45 serial port
4	10 GbE network interface port with RJ-45 connector (btbond1)
5	(Optional) 25 GbE dual-rate SFP28 (fiber network) ports (btbond1). Use either one of the ports: RJ-45 connector port or the SFP28 (fiber network) ports.

### Fiber Cables

For optical cables, you must purchase either Short Range (SR) or Long Range (LR) SFP transceivers for each of the network ports, and then plug in the appropriate optical cable. Currently, Oracle sells both the SR and LR SFP transceivers. In addition to these transceivers, you must purchase the appropriate LC-LC terminated fiber optic cables from a third-party vendor.

Name	Part Number
10Gbps Dual Rate SFP SR Transceiver	2129A
10Gbps SFP LR Transceiver	5562A-Z

### Copper Cables

You can purchase the following copper cables from Oracle. These cables have built-in SFP connectors:

Name	Length	Part Number
TwinAx passive copper cable: 1m	1m	7105137
TwinAx passive copper cable: 3m	3m	7105140
TwinAx passive copper cable: 5m	5m	7151141

## Attaching Power Cords and Initializing Components

Attach power cords for Oracle Database Appliance.

### Caution:

Before plugging in the power cords, ensure that the electrical outlets providing the power are grounded.



If you use only a single AC circuit, then connect both power cords for each component to that circuit. If you want to maintain N+1 power supply redundancy, then use two separate AC circuits. Connect one power cord from each AC circuit into each component.

For more information about cabling with the supplied Cable Management Arm, refer to *Oracle Database Appliance Owner's Guide*.

## Configuring Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager

Configure Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager (Oracle ILOM) to manage Oracle Database Appliance independent of the operating system.

Deploying a new Oracle Database Appliance requires a direct connection to the system to configure the Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager (ILOM) and the first network. If you use the serial port, ensure that the baud rate speeds match. After the first public network interface is configured, you can perform the remaining deployment steps on the Oracle Database Appliance system or from a remote system.

### Configuring Oracle ILOM Using IP Address Assigned by DHCP

Ensure that the ILOM NIC is enabled and that `ipv4` is enabled.

1. Using a client system's browser, enter the IP address or host name assigned by DHCP into the browser address field and press **Enter**. For example, `https://129.xxx.xx.xx`.
2. At the login page, enter the default user name, `root` and the default password, `changeme`.

The Oracle ILOM web interface is displayed.

### Configuring Oracle ILOM Using Static IP Address

1. Using a client system, establish a secure shell (SSH) connection by entering the following on the command line:

```
ssh -l root sp_ip_address
```

where `sp_ip_address` is the IP address assigned by DHCP.

2. Enter the default user name, `root`, and the default password, `changeme`.

The Oracle ILOM CLI prompt appears. Change the default password to a secure password of your choice.

3. Set the working directory.

```
cd /SP/network
```

4. Specify a static Ethernet configuration as follows:

```
set pendingipaddress=xxx.xxx.xx.xx
set pendingipnetmask=yyy.yyy.yyy.y
set pendingipgateway=zzz.zzz.zz.zzz
set commitpending=true
set state=enabled
```

xxx.xxx.xx.xx, yyy.yyy.yyy.y and zzz.zzz.zz.zzz are the IP address, netmask, and gateway (respectively) for your ILOM and network configuration.

5. Verify changes and then exit:

```
show /SP/network
exit
```

### Configuring Oracle ILOM Using the IPMI tool

To assign IP addresses to Oracle ILOM manually, follow these steps:

1. Open the IPMI tool.

```
# ipmitool -I open sunoem cli
```

2. Go to `SP/network` and verify that the port is enabled:

```
show /SP/network
```

3. If the port is not enabled, then enable the port.

```
ipmitool -I open sunoem cli "set /SP/network state=enabled"
```

4. In `SP/network`, verify that `ipv4` is enabled.

5. If `ipv6` is enabled, then disable `ipv6` and enable `ipv4`.

```
# ipmitool -I open sunoem cli "set /SP/network/ipv6 state=disabled"
# ipmitool -I open sunoem cli "set /SP/network/ipv4 state=enabled"
```

### Related Topics

- [Deployment Checklist for Oracle Database Appliance Bare Metal Installations](#)  
This checklist provides an overview of the tasks to setup and deploy Oracle Database Appliance for the first time.

## Powering On Oracle Database Appliance the First Time

Use this procedure the first time you power on Oracle Database Appliance.

When you power on Oracle Database Appliance for the first time, the system automatically defines your public network interface based on which of the public interface ports are connected. For Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA, the dual-port 10/25 GbE SFP28 PCIe adapter is used for the cluster interconnect.

 **Note:**

After you connect power cords, the green SP OK light-emitting diode (LED) lights blink for a few minutes, and then turn to steady ON. The cooling fans also may turn on. However, these events do not indicate that the system is started. You must complete all of the steps in this section to turn on the appliance properly. Read through the entire section to understand the sequence required for initial system startup.

1. (For Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA) Turn on the attached storage shelf, or shelves, before powering on the server nodes.
2. Push the recessed power button to turn on the appliance.

 **Note:**

The fully-initialized state is indicated by the green SP OK LEDs staying steadily lit. If any of the green LED lights on the server are still blinking, then wait for them to complete their initialization steps.

Refer to the figures and to the following callout table to identify the power button and the system initialization status indicator lights.

**Figure 3-1 Front of Oracle Database Appliance Power Panel**



**Table 3-8 Description of Callouts for Powering On Oracle Database Appliance**

Callout	Function
1	SP OK LED light, located on the front panel of the appliance.
2	Recessed On/Off power button, which is located on the front panel of the appliance. Push this button only once. Do not repeatedly push the power button.
3	Green Power OK LED, located on the front panel. These lights must be in the steady ON position (Green light does not blink) before you log on to the system.

Oracle Database Appliance does not use the DO NOT SERVICE indicator.

3. Wait for Oracle Database Appliance to complete startup.



**Note:**

Do not repeatedly push the power buttons. Startup can take several minutes to complete.

Oracle Database Appliance is ready for use when the green Power OK LEDs (callout 3) on the front of the system remains steadily on.

# 4

## Provisioning Oracle Database Appliance Baremetal System

Understand the process to configure Oracle Database Appliance baremetal system.

The Web Console is the preferred method of deploying your bare metal platform configuration. The Web Console provides all of the fields necessary to provision Oracle Database Appliance, including configuring the system, network, database, and Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR). If you prefer to use the command-line interface, you must create a JSON file to configure the deployment options.

- [Plumbing the Network](#)  
Plumb the Oracle Database Appliance network with the public internet protocol (IP) information assigned to a node, to enable provisioning of the Oracle Database Appliance software.
- [Verifying Cabling and Network Connections](#)  
After powering on Oracle Database Appliance, verify that the network connections are set up correctly.
- [Downloading Oracle Database Appliance Software](#)  
Download Oracle Database Appliance software and copy to a temporary location before applying updates to your appliance.
- [Installing Oracle Database Appliance Software](#)  
Install Oracle Database Appliance software, before creating the appliance.
- [Creating the Appliance](#)  
Create the appliance using the Web Console.

### Plumbing the Network

Plumb the Oracle Database Appliance network with the public internet protocol (IP) information assigned to a node, to enable provisioning of the Oracle Database Appliance software.

1. Connect to Oracle ILOM remote console, then log into Oracle Database Appliance as root.
2. Run the command `configure-firstnet` on **both** nodes.

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli configure-firstnet
Using bonding public interface (yes/no) [yes]:
Select the Interface to configure the network on (btbond1) [btbond1]:
Configure DHCP on btbond1 (yes/no) [no]:
INFO: You have chosen Static configuration
Use VLAN on btbond1 (yes/no) [no]:
```

3. Complete the network configuration as prompted and configure the public network interface. Also provide the netmask and gateway IP address.

You use this network connection to transfer the software to the server node.

#### Example 4-1 Example of a Bonded Configuration

For a bonded configuration, answer `yes` to using a bonding public interface and configure the first network to use a `btbond1` interface without configuring DHCP.

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli configure-firstnet
Select the Interface to configure the network on (btbond1 btbond2
sfbond1) [btbond1]:
Configure DHCP on btbond1 (yes/no) [no]:
INFO: You have chosen Static configuration
Use VLAN on btbond1 (yes/no) [no]:
Enter the IP address to configure : 10.209.13.109
Enter the Netmask address to configure : 255.255.252.0
Enter the Gateway address to configure[10.209.12.1] :
INFO: Plumbing the IPs now
INFO: Restarting the network
Shutting down interface btbond1: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface btbond2: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface p3p1: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface p3p2: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface sfbond1: [ OK ]
Shutting down loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface btbond1: Determining if ip address 10.209.13.109 is
already in use for device btbond1...
[ OK ]
Bringing up interface btbond2: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface sfbond1: [ OK ]
```

#### Example 4-2 Example of a Non-Bonded Configuration

To create a non-bonded configuration and disable VLAN capabilities, answer `no` to using a bonding public interface.

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli configure-firstnet
Using bonding public interface (yes/no) [yes]: no
INFO: Breaking the bonding on btbond1
INFO: remove bonding module: rmmod bonding
INFO: remove slave setup in /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-em2
INFO: remove slave setup in /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-em3
INFO: Restarting the network
Shutting down interface em1: [ OK ]
Shutting down loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface em1: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface em2: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface em3: [ OK ]
INFO: Restarting the DCS agent
initdcsagent stop/waiting
initdcsagent start/running, process 57629
Select the Interface to configure the network on (em2 em3) [em2]:
Configure DHCP on em2 (yes/no) [no]:
INFO: You have chosen Static configuration
```

```
Enter the IP address to configure : 10.31.102.101
Enter the Netmask address to configure : 255.255.240.0
Enter the Gateway address to configure[10.31.96.1] :
INFO: Plumbing the IPs now
INFO: Restarting the network
Shutting down interface em1: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface em2: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface em3: [ OK ]
Shutting down loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface em1: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface em2: Determining if ip address 10.31.102.101 is
already in use for device em2...
[ OK ]
Bringing up interface em3: [ OK ]
```

### Example 4-3 Example of Configuring VLAN

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli configure-firstnet
Using bonding public interface (yes/no) [yes]:
Select the Interface to configure the network on (btbond1) [btbond1]:
Configure DHCP on btbond1 (yes/no) [no]:
INFO: You have chosen Static configuration
Use VLAN on btbond1 (yes/no) [no]:yes
Configure VLAN on btbond1, input VLAN ID [2 - 4094] 122
INFO: using network interface btbond1.122
Enter the IP address to configure : 192.0.2.24
Enter the Netmask address to configure : 192.0.2.24
Enter the Gateway address to configure[192.0.2.24] :
INFO: Restarting the network
Shutting down interface btbond1: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface em1: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface plp1: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface plp2: [ OK ]
Shutting down loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface btbond1:
Determining if ip address 192.0.2.24 is already in use for device
btbond1... [ OK ]
Bringing up interface em1: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface plp1:
Determining if ip address 192.0.2.24 is already in use for device
plp1... [ OK ]
Bringing up interface plp2:
Determining if ip address 192.0.2.24 is already in use for device plp2...
[ OK ]
Bringing up interface btbond1.122:
Determining if ip address 192.0.2.24 is already in use for device
btbond1.122... [ OK ]
INFO: Restarting the DCS agent
initdcsagent stop/waiting
initdcsagent start/running, process 32104
```

## Related Topics

- [Deployment Checklist for Oracle Database Appliance Bare Metal Installations](#)  
This checklist provides an overview of the tasks to setup and deploy Oracle Database Appliance for the first time.

# Verifying Cabling and Network Connections

After powering on Oracle Database Appliance, verify that the network connections are set up correctly.

Run the validation scripts only on Oracle Database Appliance HA models.

1. Log into the Oracle Database Appliance console and access the server node with user name as `root` and password `welcome1`.
2. Run validation scripts on both nodes, to verify cabling:

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli validate-storage topology
INFO : ODA Topology Verification
INFO : Running on Node0
INFO : Check hardware type
SUCCESS : Type of hardware found : X7-2
INFO : Check for Environment(Bare Metal or Virtual Machine)
SUCCESS : Type of environment found : Bare Metal
INFO : Check number of Controllers
SUCCESS : Number of ahci controller found : 1
SUCCESS : Number of External SCSI controllers found : 2
INFO : Check for Controllers correct PCIe slot address
SUCCESS : Internal RAID controller :
SUCCESS : External LSI SAS controller 0 : 3b:00.0
SUCCESS : External LSI SAS controller 1 : 5e:00.0
INFO : Check if JBOD powered on
SUCCESS : 2JBOD : Powered-on
INFO : Check for correct number of EBODS(2 or 4)
SUCCESS : EBOD found : 4
INFO : Check for External Controller 0
SUCCESS : Cable check for port 0 on controller 0
SUCCESS : Cable check for port 1 on controller 0
SUCCESS : Overall Cable check for controller 0
INFO : Check for External Controller 1
SUCCESS : Cable check for port 0 on controller 1
SUCCESS : Cable check for port 1 on controller 1
SUCCESS : Overall Cable check for controller 1
INFO : Check for overall status of cable validation on Node0
SUCCESS : Overall Cable Validation on Node0
SUCCESS : JBOD0 Nickname set correctly
SUCCESS : JBOD1 Nickname set correctly
```

3. If there is a storage expansion shelf connected to the appliance, then power it on. Run the `storagetopology` command on both nodes to make sure the cabling is correct:

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli validate-storage topology
INFO : ODA Topology Verification
INFO : Running on Node0
```







Example using `sftp` command:

```
sftp root@oda_host
```

Enter the `root` password, and then copy the file.

```
put software_file
```

For example, for release 19.5:

```
put odacli-dcs-19.5.0.0.0-191031-GI-19.5.0.0.zip
put odacli-dcs-19.5.0.0.0-191031-DB-19.5.0.0.zip
```

The GI and RDBMS Clone files are copied to the temporary location on the appliance. You can update the repository, and create the appliance, as explained in the next topic.

### Related Topics

- 

## Installing Oracle Database Appliance Software

Install Oracle Database Appliance software, before creating the appliance.

Ensure that the Oracle Database Appliance patches are downloaded and available for updating the repository, as described in the topic *Downloading Oracle Database Appliance Software*.

1. Verify the current system version by running the following command on **both** nodes:

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli describe-component -v
```

2. Update the repository with Oracle Grid Infrastructure and Database software.

```
[root@odal opt]# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli update-repository -f /tmp/
GI_clone_file,/tmp/DB_clone_file
```

For example, for release 19.5:

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli update-repository -f /tmp/odacli-
dcs-19.5.0.0.0-191031-DB-19.5.0.0.zip,/tmp/odacli-dcs-19.5.0.0.0-191031-
GI-19.5.0.0.zip
```

3. Confirm that the repository update is successful:

```
[root@odal opt]# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli describe-job -i job_ID
```

4. Delete the software zip files from the temporary location on the appliance to save space:

```
[root@oda1 opt]# rm software_file
rm: remove regular file software_file? y
```

You have now updated the repository with the Oracle Database Appliance software, and can create your appliance, as described in the next topic.

#### Related Topics

- [Deployment Checklist for Oracle Database Appliance Bare Metal Installations](#)  
This checklist provides an overview of the tasks to setup and deploy Oracle Database Appliance for the first time.

## Creating the Appliance

Create the appliance using the Web Console.

Ensure that ports 7070 and 7093 on the network between Oracle Database Appliance and the client machine, are open.

1. Navigate to the Web Console. You are prompted to set the password for the `oda-admin` user.

```
https://ODA-host-ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html
```

2. Log into the Web Console with the new password.

When you launch the Web Console on an unconfigured appliance, the Appliance page notifies you that the appliance is not configured and provides a link to the pages needed to configure and create the appliance.

3. Click **Create Appliance**.
4. In the Create Appliance page, if you want to create the appliance from a saved configuration, click **Browse**, and select the JSON file. The information from the saved configuration file is loaded. You can retain or edit the fields. Otherwise, manually, provide the values to create the appliance.
5. In the System Information section, specify the values as follows.
  - a. **Host Name:** Enter the host name.  
The host name can contain alphanumeric characters and dashes (-), but cannot start with a number or dash (-) or end with dash (-). Do not exceed 30 characters.
  - b. **Domain Name:** Enter the domain name.
  - c. **Region:** Select the region of the world where the Oracle Database Appliance is located.
  - d. **Time Zone:** Select the time zone where the Oracle Database Appliance is located.
  - e. (Optional) **DNS Servers:** Enter addresses for one or more DNS servers.
  - f. (Optional) **NTP Servers:** Enter addresses for one or more NTP servers.
  - g. **Diskgroup Redundancy:** If there are up to two disk groups, then you can select the disk group redundancy as Normal or Flex. A quorum disk must

exist, if you want to select Flex redundancy. If there are more than two disk groups, then you can select the redundancy as Normal, High, or Flex. Select **Normal**, **High**, or **Flex**, as per your deployment requirement.

The Flex parameter defines the disk group redundancy. For Oracle ASM storage, when you select Flex as the disk group redundancy, you can set the database redundancy to either Mirror or High. You can set the disk group redundancy only during appliance creation. The database redundancy can be set anytime you create the database.

The redundancy level is for DATA, RECO, and FLASH. If you select High redundancy, then DATA, RECO, and FLASH are all High redundancy. If the system has less than five (5) NVMe storage devices, then redundancy is automatically set to Normal.

If the system has more than three (3) NVMe storage devices, then you can choose the Flex redundancy option.

**Note:** For Oracle Database Appliance hardware models other than X8-2, the redundancy level for REDO can be set to Flex, but the file groups created in REDO are all High redundancy.

- h. Data Storage Percentage:** Enter a whole number between 10 and 90 to define the percentage of storage reserved for DATA, the remainder is reserved for RECO. For example, if you enter 80, then 80% of the storage for DATA and 20% for RECO.
- i. System Password and Confirm Password:** Enter the system password in both fields.

The system password is the password set for UNIX and `root` users. The password must begin with an alpha character and cannot contain quotation marks. Do not exceed 30 characters.

- 6.** In the Network Information section, configure the primary client access network, virtual networks, and an Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager (ILOM) network. You are only required to configure the client access network. The ILOM configuration is optional if you already configured the ILOM for the appliance and you do not need to make changes.

Specify the following, depending on whether it is a single-node or multi-node Oracle Database Appliance deployment:

- a. Client Access Network Host Name:** For Node0, enter the host name for the primary client access network.
- b. Client Access Network IP Address:** For Node0, enter the IP address for the primary client access network.
- c. VIP Name for Node0:** Enter the name of the virtual IP network for Node0.
- d. VIP IP Address for Node0:** Enter the virtual IP address that resides on Node0 and is shared between the nodes.
- e. VIP Name for Node1:** Enter the name of the virtual IP network for Node0.
- f. VIP IP Address for Node1:** Enter the virtual IP address that resides on Node1 and is shared between the nodes.
- g. (Optional) ILOM Host Name:** Enter the name of the Oracle ILOM host for Node0 and Node1.



- g. Database Edition:** Select the Oracle Database edition, either Standard Edition and Enterprise Edition. Your license determines which database edition you are eligible to create in the appliance.
  - h. Password:** Provide a password for the database.
  - i. Deployment:** Select a deployment type from the list. The options are RAC, RAC-One, or SI (single instance database). If you select a single instance database, then select the node for the SI database deployment.

If you select a single instance database, then you have the option to create the database on either Node0 or Node1. The default is Node0.
  - j. Shape:** Select a database shape from the list.
  - k.** In the **Database Class** field, select a database class from the drop-down list. If an option is not available in the list, it is not supported for the database edition on the Oracle Database Appliance or the version that you selected. The default is OLTP.
  - l.** In the **Storage** field, select **ACFS** or **ASM** from the drop-down list. The default is Oracle ASM.

Only Oracle 18c, 12.2, and 12.1 databases can use Oracle ASM storage. Oracle Database 11.2 is only supported on Oracle ACFS.
  - m.** If you select the storage as **ASM**, and the Database Version is 12.2 or later, and you specified the disk group redundancy as **Flex**, then you can select the **Database Redundancy** value as **Mirror** or **High**.

You can choose Oracle ACFS storage for all database versions, but if you select Oracle ACFS storage, then you cannot specify the database redundancy. If your disk group redundancy is Flex, and you choose Oracle ACFS storage for the database, then the database redundancy is set to Mirror.
  - n. Data Files on Flash Storage:** Select **Yes** or **No**.

This option is only available if the HA system has HDD storage drives.
  - o. Configure EM Express:** Select **Yes** or **No**.

Select **Yes** to configure the Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Express (EM Express) console for Oracle Database 12.2.1.0 or 12.1.0.2 or the Database Control Console for Oracle Database 11.2.0.4. Selecting Yes enables you to use the console to manage the database.
  - p. Character set:** Select a character set.
  - q. National Characterset:** Select a national character set.
  - r. Language:** Select the database language.
  - s. Territory:** Select a territory or location from the list.
- 10.** (Optional) Configure and enable Oracle ASR on the ASR page.
- You can configure and enable Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR) now or later:
- To not enable Oracle ASR during deployment, select **No** and click **Submit**. After deployment, you can configure an internal Oracle ASR or register with an external Oracle ASR Manager from either the Web Console or command-line interface.

- Internal Oracle ASR: choose to configure Oracle ASR Manager on Oracle Database Appliance or use Oracle ASR Manager configured on another server in the same network as your appliance.
  - External Oracle ASR: If you already have Oracle ASR Manager configured elsewhere, you can register Oracle Database Appliance with your existing Oracle ASR Manager.
- To enable Oracle ASR, select **Yes** and complete the fields:
    - a. **ASR User Name:** Enter the e-mail address associated with the My Oracle Support account under which the server is registered.
    - b. **Password:** Enter the password associated with the My Oracle Support account under which the server is registered.
    - c. **SNMP Version:** Select **V2** or **V3**. V3 is the default and recommended version.
    - d. **HTTP Proxy used for Upload to ASR:** Select **Yes** or **No**.
    - e. **Proxy Server Name:** If you are using a proxy for upload, enter the proxy server name.
    - f. **Proxy Port:** If you are using a proxy for upload, enter the proxy port.
    - g. **(Optional) HTTP Proxy Requires Authentication:** If you are using a proxy for upload, select **Yes** if you require authentication. If you do not require authentication, select **No**.
    - h. **Proxy User Name:** If you are using a proxy for upload, enter the proxy user name.
    - i. **(Optional) Proxy Password:** If you are using a proxy for upload and require authentication, enter the proxy password.
11. Click **Submit**. When prompted, click **Yes** to confirm that you want to start the job to deploy the appliance.
  12. Verify that the appliance is deployed. Run the `odacli describe-appliance` command. For multi-node deployments, run the command on both nodes. For example:

```
[root@oda1 opt]# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli describe-appliance
Appliance Information
-----
ID: 618dfa94-35ff-4f81-8aab-e93810bc2c45
Platform: Odav6
Data Disk Count: 48
CPU Core Count: 36
Created: July 24, 2018 1:55:57 PM MDT
System Information
-----
Name: odax7-2ha
Domain Name: example.com
Time Zone: America/Denver
DB Edition: EE
DNS Servers: 192.1.1.1 192.1.1.2
NTP Servers: 192.1.1.3 192.1.1.4
Disk Group Information
-----
DG Name Redundancy Percentage
```



---

```
Data High 80
Reco High 20
Redo High 100
Flash High 100
```

The job to create the appliance takes time to complete. To monitor the job progress, click the **Activity** tab. Click the job number to view the tasks.

After deployment, the `root` and database users `SYS`, `SYSTEM`, and `PDBADMIN` are set to the system password. The `oracle` and `grid` passwords are set to the default password. Change these passwords to comply with your user security protocols.

#### Related Topics

- [Errors When Logging into the Web Console](#)  
If you have problems logging into the Web Console, then it may be due to your browser or credentials.

#### Related Topics

- [Deployment Checklist for Oracle Database Appliance Bare Metal Installations](#)  
This checklist provides an overview of the tasks to setup and deploy Oracle Database Appliance for the first time.

#### Related Topics

- [Restoring an Oracle Database Appliance Baremetal System](#)  
Re-image Oracle Database Appliance to perform a bare metal restore of Oracle Database Appliance.

# 5

## Oracle Database Appliance Postinstallation Tasks

Complete these administrative tasks after you have deployed software, but before the system is operational.

- [Configuring CPU Core Count](#)  
Oracle Database Appliance is delivered with all cores on each server enabled. Follow this procedure to reduce the number of cores, if required.
- [Securing Oracle ILOM Service Processors](#)  
Change the Oracle ILOM default password after completing Oracle Database Appliance deployment.
- [Changing Oracle Database Appliance Passwords](#)  
After deploying your appliance, ensure that you change the following passwords for securing your system.

### Related Topics

- [Deployment Checklist for Oracle Database Appliance Bare Metal Installations](#)  
This checklist provides an overview of the tasks to setup and deploy Oracle Database Appliance for the first time.

## Configuring CPU Core Count

Oracle Database Appliance is delivered with all cores on each server enabled. Follow this procedure to reduce the number of cores, if required.

1. To reduce the number of cores, run the following command on Node 0 only:

Set the cores in multiples of 2, for example, 12:

```
[root@oak1 opt]# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli update-cpucore --cores 12
```

2. Check if the job completed successfully:

```
[root@oak1 opt]# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli describe-job -i job_ID
```

3. Verify that the core count is updated on both nodes:

```
[root@oak1 opt]# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli describe-cpucore
```

# Securing Oracle ILOM Service Processors

Change the Oracle ILOM default password after completing Oracle Database Appliance deployment.

Do not change the default password until after you have completed software deployment on the Oracle Database Appliance.

## Changing Oracle ILOM Password from the Console

1. In the Oracle ILOM console, from the **Administration** menu, select **User Management**, and then navigate to the **User Accounts** subtab.
2. Select **root** user and click **Edit**.
3. Change the `root` user password.

## Changing Oracle ILOM Password Using CLI Commands

1. Connect to the Oracle ILOM console through SSH:

```
# ssh -l root SP-ipaddr
```

2. Set the new password:

```
# set /SP/users/root password=new_password
Changing password for user /SP/users/root/password...
Enter new password again: *****
New password was successfully set for user /SP/users/root
```

# Changing Oracle Database Appliance Passwords

After deploying your appliance, ensure that you change the following passwords for securing your system.

## Changing the Oracle Installation Owner Passwords

During deployment, the root and database users SYS, SYSTEM and PDBADMIN are set to the system password. After deployment, the oracle and grid passwords are also set to the system password. Change the passwords to comply with your enterprise user security protocols. Refer to the *Oracle Database Appliance Security Guide* and *Oracle Database Security Guide* for information about the required configuration and best practices to secure database systems.

## Changing the oda-admin User Password through the Command-Line

1. Log in to the appliance as `root`.
2. Run the `odacli-adm set-credential` command to reset the password. Enter the new password when prompted.

```
# odacli-adm set-credential --password --username oda-admin
Agent password: new password
```

### Changing the the oda-admin User Password through the Web Console

1. Log into the Web Console using the user name `oda-admin`.
2. Click **About**, then **User Settings** in the upper right corner of the Web Console.
3. Enter the password in the Password field and the Password Confirmation field, then click **Submit**.  
A confirmation message is displayed.
4. Click **About**, then click **Sign Out**.
5. Log back into the Web Console with the new password.

 **Note:**

The `oda-admin` password expiration period is 90 days.

# 6

## Re-imaging Oracle Database Appliance

Bare metal operating system re-imaging installs Oracle Database Appliance operating system software on the local (boot) drive.

Bare Metal is a non-virtualized Oracle Database Appliance configuration. Oracle Database Appliance ships from the factory with a bare metal configuration, default ISO image and Appliance Manager installed. Use the OS ISO Image to restore the OS to the "shipped from factory" state. Use only when necessary. Reimaging does not patch the firmware or update the component versions; it only re-images the local system disk from an operating system perspective. After imaging is completed, redeploy the End User image, then restore from backup, as needed.

- [Cleaning Up Incomplete or Failed Installations](#)  
Use the Oracle Database Appliance cleanup deploy utility, `/opt/oracle/oak/onecmd/cleanup.pl` to uninstall Oracle Database Appliance components.
- [Restoring an Oracle Database Appliance Baremetal System](#)  
Re-image Oracle Database Appliance to perform a bare metal restore of Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Performing Secure Erase of Data on Storage Disks](#)  
With this release, you can securely erase data from storage devices. Running the secure erase tool deletes the data on the storage disk permanently.

### Related Topics

- [Errors when re-imaging Oracle Database Appliance](#)  
Understand how to troubleshoot errors that occur when re-imaging Oracle Database Appliance.

## Cleaning Up Incomplete or Failed Installations

Use the Oracle Database Appliance cleanup deploy utility, `/opt/oracle/oak/onecmd/cleanup.pl` to uninstall Oracle Database Appliance components.

### About the Cleanup Utility

Use the cleanup deploy utility to do the following:

- Uninstall Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR)
- Uninstall Oracle Trace File Analyzer (TFA)
- Uninstall Oracle ORAchk Health Check Tool
- Uninstall Oracle Grid Infrastructure and the Oracle stack
- Reset or delete the Oracle Linux udev rules
- Delete users and groups that were created when the appliance was created.

The script removes the firstnet config and the client access VLAN UNIX\_DB, but does not delete any other VLANs. The script also resets any disabled CPU cores and enables all of the cores.

The cleanup utility runs in two modes: default and force mode. In the default mode, the commands used as part of cleanup do not use the force option. The ASM disk status is changed from MEMBER to FORMER, but ASM header on the disk is not erased. The default mode can be used only for cleaning up or re-provisioning of the same system.



#### Note:

For High-Availability systems, run the cleanup utility on both nodes sequentially. Ensure that the cleanup utility has completed on the first node, and then start the process on the second node.

### Running the Cleanup Utility for a Baremetal Deployment

```
# perl cleanup.pl [-griduser grid_user]  
[-dbuser db_user] [-groups comma separated list of groups]  
[-erasedata] [f]
```

When the *grid\_user* and *db\_user* are the same (`roleSeparation=false`), you must run the script for each user (`-gridUser` and `-dbUser`).

**Table 6-1** Command Options for Cleanup Utility

Option	Description
<i>grid_user</i>	Describes the Oracle Grid Infrastructure user name. The default user is <code>grid</code> .
<i>db_user</i>	Describes the database user name. The default user is <code>oracle</code> Example with <code>grid</code> and <code>oracle</code> users:  <code>cleanup.pl -griduser oracle -dbuser oracle</code>
<i>groups</i>	Describes the comma-separated list of groups. The default groups are <code>oinstall,dba,asmadmin,asmoper,asmdba</code> .
<i>erasedata</i>	Completely erases all disks on system. It is mandatory to run this option if intention of cleanup is to reuse or move these disks on other systems. Example of secure erase:  <code>cleanup.pl -erasedata</code>
<code>cleanDefNet</code>	Cleans up the default public network.

**Table 6-1 (Cont.) Command Options for Cleanup Utility**

Option	Description
checkHeader	Checks for OAK/ASM header on disks after successfully running the cleanup script. Use this to validate if the OAK/ASM header was erased by the cleanup script or not. Example of checking disk header:  cleanup.pl -checkHeader
f	In the force mode, all commands use the force option. The ASM disk header is erased. The oakd header on the disk is erased in both default and force modes. Example of default mode:  cleanup.pl  Example of force mode:  cleanup.pl -f

### Running the Cleanup Script for a Virtualized Platform Deployment

Use this cleanup deploy script tool to clean up a Virtualized Platform deployment on Oracle Database Appliance.

Run the following command from dom0 on Node 0 to remove ODA\_BASE and the initial network configuration.

```
/opt/oracle/oak/tools/cleanOdabase.py
```

### Related Topics

- [Deployment Checklist for Oracle Database Appliance Bare Metal Installations](#)  
This checklist provides an overview of the tasks to setup and deploy Oracle Database Appliance for the first time.

## Restoring an Oracle Database Appliance Baremetal System

Re-image Oracle Database Appliance to perform a bare metal restore of Oracle Database Appliance.

Bare metal restore uses Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager (ILOM) to re-image the Oracle Database Appliance node. The ILOM must be configured before performing a bare metal restore or re-image. Generally, the ILOM is configured as part of readying for deploying Oracle Database Appliance.

Download the Oracle Database Appliance Bare Metal ISO image to your local machine before you launch the ILOM console.

Follow these steps to re-image your appliance. For Oracle Database Appliance High-Availability deployment, follow these steps on **both** nodes.

1. Open a browser and connect to Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager (ILOM) on Node 0 as root.

`https://ilom-ip-address`

2. Launch the Remote Console.
  - a. Expand **Remote Control** in the left navigation.
  - b. Click the **Redirection** tab.
  - c. Click **Launch** for the Remote Console in the Actions menu.

The state of the system determines what appears on the Console page.

3. Add the image.
  - a. Click the **KVMS** tab, then select **Storage**.
  - b. Click **Add**.
  - c. Browse to the Oracle Database Appliance Bare Metal ISO Image, highlight the image, then click **Select**.
  - d. Click **Connect**.

The mounting of the ISO image is successful when the **Connect** button changes to a **Disconnect** button.

- e. Click **OK**
4. Configure the CD-ROM as the next boot device.
  - a. Expand **Host Management** in the left menu of the ILOM Remote Console tab.
  - b. Click **Host Control**.
  - c. Select **CDROM** from the Next Boot Device menu, then click **Save**.

The CD-ROM icon in the top right corner is highlighted.

5. Power cycle the node.
  - a. Click **Power Control** in the **Host Management** menu.
  - b. Select **Power Cycle** , then click **Save**.

When the node comes back after the power cycle, re-imaging starts automatically. The Oracle Linux page appears, followed by the Running Post-Install scripts page.

The Running Post-Install scripts page is a static page and might give the impression that the re-imaging process is not progressing. The post-install process during re-imaging will wait until the synchronization between the partitions of the two mirrored local hard disks is complete, which can take 15 to 20 minutes to complete.

To check the progress of re-synchronization, press the ALT-F2 key combination to open a second console and enter the following command:

```
# cat /proc/mdstat
```

When the re-synchronization is complete, re-imaging is completed and the machine restarts.



After the machine restarts, the system is ready for you to deploy the Oracle software on the appliance to create an Oracle Database Appliance bare metal platform.

### Related Topics

- [Creating the Appliance](#)  
Create the appliance using the Web Console.

## Performing Secure Erase of Data on Storage Disks

With this release, you can securely erase data from storage devices. Running the secure erase tool deletes the data on the storage disk permanently.

You may want to consolidate storage disks between appliances. For example, you can use X7-2 disks on X6-2 models, and may want to consolidate all X6-2 disks on one system, and use all new X7-2 storage disks on another system. In such cases, use secure erase to erase headers from disks before re-imaging the disks, since the storage disks across the appliances may have different partition ratios.

### Note:

Running the secure erase tool removes data from storage disks permanently. If you have any data on the disk, then take a backup of your storage disk before running the secure erase tool.

Follow the steps to run the secure erase tool:

1. Stop `oakd` and the database and Oracle Grid Infrastructure before running the secure erase tool.

On bare metal systems, run the command:

```
# odaadmcli stop oak
```

On Virtualized Platforms:

```
# oakcli stop oak
```

To stop Oracle Clusterware resources:

```
# crsctl stop crs -f
```

2. Run the secure erase tool:

```
# /opt/oracle/oak/bin/odaeraser.py
```

3. You can also run the secure erase tool when running the cleanup tool:

```
# cleanup.pl -erasedata
```

**Example 6-1 Options for the Secure Erase Tool**

Option	Description
-a, --all	Erases all disks. For example:  # /opt/oracle/oak/bin/odaeraser.py --all
--disk <i>disk1,disk2</i>	Erases specified disks. For example:  # /opt/oracle/oak/bin/odaeraser.py --disk e0_pd_00,e0_pd_01
--dryrun	Runs the tool in the test mode
--type HDD SSD NVMe	Erases the type of disk specified
-v, --verbose	Displays verbose output
-h, --help	Displays all CLI options for the tool

# 7

## Managing Oracle Databases

Manage the Oracle Databases on your Oracle Database Appliance. For an Oracle Database Appliance Virtualized Platform, see the `oakcli` commands for managing the databases.

- [About Administrative Groups and Users on Oracle Database Appliance](#)  
Oracle Database Appliance Web Console deployment creates operating system groups and users whose members are granted system administration privileges on the appliance.
- [About Data Migration Options for Oracle Database Appliance](#)  
Oracle Database Appliance supports the use of standard Oracle Database loading and migration tools.
- [Working with Databases](#)  
Use the Web Console to display a list of databases, database details, and create and delete databases. You can use CLI commands to manage your databases.
- [Working with Database Homes](#)  
Use the Web Console to display a list of database homes, details, and create and delete database homes.
- [Migrating Databases](#)  
Review these topics to learn how to prepare for and migrate an entire database to your Oracle Database Appliance.
- [About Managing Multiple Database Instances Using Instance Caging](#)  
Use instance caging to manage your system resources on Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Oracle EM Express and DB Console](#)  
You can use Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Express (EM Express), or the Database Control Console (DB Console) to manage your database.

### About Administrative Groups and Users on Oracle Database Appliance

Oracle Database Appliance Web Console deployment creates operating system groups and users whose members are granted system administration privileges on the appliance.

During configuration, two administrative accounts are created for Oracle Database Appliance: the user `grid`, with a user ID (UID) of 1001, and the user `oracle`, with a UID of 1000. The user `grid` is the Oracle Grid Infrastructure installation owner. The user `oracle` is the Oracle Database installation owner, and the owner of all Oracle Database homes (Oracle homes). By default, these users are members of operating system groups whose members are granted privileges to start up and administer Oracle Database and Oracle Automatic Storage Management.

The following table describes the Oracle system privileges groups, and information about the operating system authentication groups:

**Table 7-1 Operating System Groups and Users on Oracle Database Appliance**

Oracle System Privileges	Group Name	Group ID (GID)	<i>grid</i> is a member	<i>oracle</i> is a member
Oracle Inventory group (OINSTALL)	oinstall	1001	yes (primary group)	yes (primary group)
OSOPER for dbaoper group	dbaoper	1002	yes	yes
OSDBA group	dba	1003	no	yes
OSASM Group for Oracle ASM	asmadmin	1004	yes	no
OSOPER for ASM group	asmoper	1005	yes	no
OSDBA for ASM group	asmdba	1006	yes	yes

To change the Group Name and GID from the default values on Oracle Database Appliance bare metal platforms, change the default values from the Web Console during the deployment. If you create an initial database during deployment, then the password for the SYS and SYSTEM users is the Master Password that you set in the Web Console.

To change the Group Name and GID from the default values on the Oracle Database Appliance Virtualized Platform, use the `-advance` parameter with the command `oakcli deploy`. If you create an initial database during deployment, then the password for the SYS and SYSTEM users is the ROOT password from the Configurator.



**Note:**

Change the password for both users as soon as possible after configuration to prevent unauthorized access to your database using these privileged accounts.

## About Data Migration Options for Oracle Database Appliance

Oracle Database Appliance supports the use of standard Oracle Database loading and migration tools.

If you are loading data or migrating data from an existing database to Oracle Database Appliance, then you can use the standard Oracle Database loading and migration tools. These tools include the following:

- Oracle GoldenGate
- SQL\*Loader
- Oracle Data Pump

- transportable tablespaces
- RMAN

You can also use the RMAN utility to back up and recover databases on Oracle Database Appliance.

## Working with Databases

Use the Web Console to display a list of databases, database details, and create and delete databases. You can use CLI commands to manage your databases.

### Note:

Oracle Database Appliance release 18.7 enables unified auditing for databases created in new database homes. Unified audit trail captures audit information and places them in one location and in one format. This consolidated view enables auditors to co-relate audit information from different components. Having a single audit trail also improves management and security of the audit trail. For more information about unified audit trail for Oracle Database, see *Oracle Database Security Guide*.

- [Viewing Databases](#)  
Use the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to display a list of Oracle databases and database details, create, upgrade, and delete a database in Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Creating a Database](#)  
Use the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to create a database in Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Creating a Database Instance](#)  
Create an instance only database from the command-line interface.
- [Cloning a Database from Backup](#)  
Use the Web Console to clone a database from a backup.
- [Cloning an Oracle ACFS Database Using the Web Console](#)  
Create a database from an existing Oracle ACFS database using the Web Console.
- [Cloning an Oracle ACFS Database Using Command Line Interface](#)  
Create a database from an existing Oracle ACFS database using CLI commands.
- [Upgrading a Database](#)  
Use the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to upgrade an Oracle database to a different database home version.
- [Deleting a Database](#)  
Use the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to delete an Oracle database.

## Viewing Databases

Use the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to display a list of Oracle databases and database details, create, upgrade, and delete a database in Oracle Database Appliance.

On the Oracle Database Appliance Virtualized Platform, see the command `oakcli list databases`.

1. Log into the Web Console:

```
https://host name or ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html
```

2. Click the **Database** tab.

The screenshot shows the Oracle Database Appliance Web Console interface. The 'Database' tab is selected, displaying a list of databases. The interface includes a search bar, a sort dropdown set to 'Created: New to Old', and a 'Create Database' button. The database list is as follows:

Database Name	ID	Created	CDB	DB Version	Shape	Storage	Actions
<a href="#">clonedb</a>	19b58021-5726-4029-83c9-9530dc720b96	Fri Oct 05 2018 9:37:06 AM	true	18.3.0.0.180717	odb1s	ACFS	Actions
<a href="#">testdb18</a>	4c0c1240-be0d-495b-b665-c2340297e721	Fri Oct 05 2018 9:25:23 AM	false	18.3.0.0.180717	odb4	ASM	Actions
<a href="#">cdbscfs</a>	58efc217-8bad-415e-affd-0aeacc3f755	Tue Oct 02 2018 7:46:36 AM	true	18.3.0.0.180717	odb1s	ACFS	Actions
<a href="#">cdb18asm</a>	1d123775-d0c0-4379-9597-6826f2baf076	Tue Oct 02 2018 7:11:33 AM	true	18.3.0.0.180717	odb1	ASM	Actions
<a href="#">testdb</a>	ca0ca63e-49d5-4797-a845-af433ab0f79c	Tue Oct 02 2018 6:17:53 AM	true	18.3.0.0.180717	odb4	ASM	Actions

Copyright © 2011, 2018 Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. (Optional) Click the database name, in blue font, to display more details about the database.
4. (Optional) Click **Actions** next to a database entry to view more details, upgrade or delete the database.

## Creating a Database

Use the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to create a database in Oracle Database Appliance.

Ensure that the repository is updated with the RDBMS Clone files for a database version, before creating the database as described in *Updating Oracle Database Appliance Repository with Database Clone Files Using the CLI*.

The Web Console provides a quick and easy method of creating new databases. The Create New Database page in the Web Console is populated with default options for most of the configuration options. Drop-down lists enable you to quickly view and select from a list of available options. You can use the drop-down list to create a new database Oracle Database Home (ORACLE\_HOME) for the database or select an existing ORACLE\_HOME that you created earlier.

Oracle Database 19.5 is supported on both Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) and Oracle ASM Cluster file system (ACFS). When databases are

created in Oracle ACFS, each database is configured with its own Oracle ACFS file system for the datafiles and uses the following naming convention: `/u02/app/db user/oradata/db unique name`. The default size of this mount point is 100 GB.

The fields in the Web Console adjust, depending on the database version you select. Follow these steps to create a database:

1. Log into the Web Console:

`https://host-ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html`

2. Click the **Database** tab.
3. Click **Create Database** to display the Create Database page.
4. Select **Create Database** on the Create Database page.
5. Enter the following information on the Create Database page to configure the database:

- a. In the **DB Name** field, enter a name for the database. The name *db1* appears in the field as an example of a database name, but the field is not populated. You must enter a name.

The name must contain lowercase alphanumeric characters and cannot exceed 8 characters. The Oracle system identifier (SID) is always set to the database name.

- b. (Optional) In the **DB Unique Name** field, enter a name to define a unique name for the database.
- c. In the **Use Existing DB Home** field, select **Yes** or **No**.
- d. In the **DB Version** field, select a database bundle patch number from the drop-down list.

Available database versions with available clones appear in the list in descending order. Supported versions that are not available in the repository appear in light gray font at the bottom of the list. Search is available for the list. To add a supported version to the repository, download the RDBMS clone file and update the repository.

- e. For the **CDB** option on Oracle Database version 19.5, select **Yes** or **No**, depending on whether or not you want the database to be a container database (CDB). The default is **Yes**.

- f. In the **PDB Name** field, enter a name for the pluggable database (PDB).

Alphanumeric characters and underscore (`_`) are valid. The name must begin with an alphanumeric character and cannot exceed 30 characters. The name *pdb1* appears in the field in italic text as an example, but it is not populated. You must enter a name.

- g. In the **PDB Admin User** field, enter a name.

The field shows *pdbadmin* as an example, you must enter a name. Alphanumeric characters and underscore (`_`) are valid.

- h. In the Database Edition field, enter the edition for which you have a license, either **Enterprise Edition** or **Standard Edition**.

- i. In the **Shape** field, select a database shape from the drop-down list. The shape determines the number of cores and total memory allocated to the database. The default is odb1 (1 Core, 8 GB Memory).

- j. In the **Database Class** field, select a database class from the drop-down list. If an option is not available in the list, it is not supported for the database edition on the Oracle Database Appliance or the version that you selected. The default is OLTP.
  - k. In the **Storage** field, select **ACFS** or **ASM** from the drop-down list. The default is Oracle ASM.
  - l. If you select the storage as **ASM**, and the Database Version is 12.2 or later, and the disk group redundancy was set to **Flex** during the appliance creation, then you can select the **Database Redundancy** value as **Mirror** or **High**.  
  
You can choose Oracle ACFS storage for all database versions, but if you select Oracle ACFS storage, then you cannot specify the database redundancy. If your disk group redundancy is Flex, and you choose Oracle ACFS storage for the database, then the database redundancy is set to Mirror.
  - m. For the **Configure EM Express** or **Configure EM Console** option, select **Yes** or **No**. The default is **No**.  
  
Select **Yes** to configure the Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Express (EM Express) console for Oracle Database 19.5. Selecting **Yes** enables you to use the console to manage the database.
  - n. In the **Password** field, enter the password for the SYS, SYSTEM, and PDB Admin.  
  
The password must begin with an alpha character and cannot exceed 30 characters. Quotation marks are not allowed.
  - o. In the Confirm Password field, enter the password again to confirm.
  - p. In the **Character set** field, select an option from the drop-down list. The default is AL32UTF8.
  - q. In the **National Character set** field, select an option from the drop-down list. The default is AL16UTF16.
  - r. In the **Language** field, select a database language from the drop-down list. The default is American.
  - s. In the **Territory** field, select a territory or location for the database from the drop-down list. The default is America.
6. Click **Create**. When prompted, click **Yes** to confirm that you want to start the job to create the database.

The job is submitted and a confirmation page appears with a link to the job. Click the link to view the job progress, tasks, and status.  
After you close the Job confirmation page, you can click the **Activity** tab to monitor the job progress. Click the job number to view the tasks and status details. Click **Refresh** to refresh the page.



## Creating a Database Instance

Create an instance only database from the command-line interface.

### Note:

If you provisioned the appliance without creating an initial database, then you must create a Oracle home. If the version of the database home is different from the migrated database, create a database home for the migrated database. You might want to create a database home specifically for the migrated database.

This example creates an instance only database named `PRODDB` with database version 19.5 and a new database home.

1. Use the `odacli list-dbhomes` command to display a list of database homes and verify that a database home exists for the database version.

Note the ID if you want to use an existing database home or if you want to get more details. Use the `odacli describe-dbhomes` command to get greater details about a specific database home.

```
# odacli list-dbhomes
ID                               Name                               DB Version
-----
b727bf80-c99e-4846-ac1f-28a81a725df6 OraDB12102_home1 19.5.0.0.0

(continued)
Home Location
-----
/u01/app/orauser/product/18.0.0.0/dbhome_1
```

2. Create a database home if a database home does not exist for the database version.

If you want to create a database home for specifically for the migrated database, you can use the `odacli create-dbhome` command, or you can create the database home when you create the database. The example creates a database home for database version 19.5.0.0.0.

```
# odacli create-dbhome -v 19.5.0.0.0
```

3. Create an instance only database. You can use an existing database home ID or you can create a database home when creating the database.

To create an instance only database named `PRODDB` with database version 19.5.0.0.0 that uses an existing database home with ID `b727bf80-c99e-4846-ac1f-28a81a725df6`:

```
# odacli create-database -n PRODDB -v 19.5.0.0.0 -io -m -dh b727bf80-c99e-4846-ac1f-28a81a725df6
```

To create an instance only database named `PRODDB` with database version `19.5.0.0.0` and a database home:

```
# odacli create-database -n PRODDB -v 19.5.0.0.0 -io -m
```

## Cloning a Database from Backup

Use the Web Console to clone a database from a backup.

When you backup a database in Oracle Database Appliance, a backup report is created. Save the backup report as a JSON file and you can use the file to create a database on the same appliance, or a different appliance.

The following are the prerequisites to cloning a database from a backup:

1. The source database backup location must be Object Store or External FRA (Network File System).
2. If you use Object Store backup location, then obtain Object Store Credentials for the host.
3. If you use an External FRA (Network File System) backup location, then obtain the Network File System (NFS) mount point location.
4. Create a backup policy using the object store credentials or NFS mount point as the backup destination.
5. Attach the backup policy to the database that you want to backup.
6. Create a manual backup of the database and save the backup report generated when the backup completes.

Follow these steps to create a database from backup:

1. Log into the Web Console:  

```
https://host-ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html
```
2. Click the **Database** tab.
3. Click **Create Database** to display the Create Database page.
4. Click **Clone Database from Backup**, then click **Next** to display the Clone Database from Backup page.
5. Select the Backup Destination from which you want to create the database. If your backup destination is ObjectStore:
  - a. Select Backup Destination as **ObjectStore**.
  - b. Select your **Object Store Credential Name**.
  - c. Enter the password in the **Backup Encryption Passwords** field and the **Confirm Backup Encryption Passwords** field.

If your backup destination is Network File System (NFS):

- a. Select Backup Destination as **External FRA**.
- b. Specify the **External FRA Mount Point**.
- c. Enter the password in the **Backup Encryption Passwords** field and the **Confirm Backup Encryption Passwords** field.

6. Click **Browse** and select the backup report from which you want to create the database.

When the backup report is loaded, additional fields appear on the page and are populated based on the backup report. You can edit some of the fields.

7. In the **DB Name** field, enter a name for the database.

The name must contain lowercase alphanumeric characters and cannot exceed 8 characters. The Oracle system identifier (SID) is always set to the database name.

8. Enter the password in the **SYS User Password** field and the **Confirm SYS User Password** field.

9. Click **Create**.

10. Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to clone a database from the selected Object Store or External FRA.

When you submit the job, the job ID and a link to the job appears. Click the link to display the job status and details.

11. Validate that the job completed. You can track the job in the **Activity** tab in the Web Console, or run the command `odacli describe-job` with the job ID.

```
# odacli describe-job -i jobId
```

## Cloning an Oracle ACFS Database Using the Web Console

Create a database from an existing Oracle ACFS database using the Web Console.

Cloning enables to:

- Create a database from another database without bringing down the source database
- Create multiple databases from a gold image, thus ensuring standardized mass deployments
- Optimize space utilization, by use of Oracle ACFS snapshots in cloning
- Create different types of databases, from a single source database type. For example, you can create single-instance databases, Oracle RAC databases, or Oracle RAC One Node databases from any type of source database
- Depending on the available memory and CPU cores, specify a supported database shape such as `odb1s`, `odb2`, and so on, to create any class of database from any source database.

Follow these steps to create a database from an existing Oracle ACFS database:

1. Log into the Web Console:

```
https://host-ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html
```

2. Click the **Database** tab.
3. Click **Create Database** to display the Create Database page.
4. Click **Clone a Database**, then click **Next** to display the Clone Database page.
5. Select the **Source Database** from which you want to create the database.
6. Select the **Database Shape** (template) for your new database. The database shape you select determines the total memory allocated to the database.

7. In the **DB Name** field, enter a name for the database.  
The name must contain lowercase alphanumeric characters and cannot exceed 8 characters. The Oracle system identifier (SID) is always set to the database name.
8. Specify the **DB Unique Name** for the database. If the database unique name is not provided, then the name of the database is set to the database name.
9. Enter the password in the **SYS User Password** field and the **Confirm SYS User Password** field.
10. Optionally, specify the **TDE Wallet Password**.
11. Click **Create**.
12. Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to clone a database from the selected source database.  
When you submit the job, the job ID and a link to the job appears. Click the link to display the job status and details.
13. Validate that the job completed. You can track the job in the **Activity** tab in the Web Console, or run the command `odacli describe-job` with the job ID.

```
# odacli describe-job -ijobId
```

## Cloning an Oracle ACFS Database Using Command Line Interface

Create a database from an existing Oracle ACFS database using CLI commands.

Cloning enables to:

- Create a database from another database without bringing down the source database
- Create multiple databases from a gold image, thus ensuring standardized mass deployments
- Optimize space utilization, by use of Oracle ACFS snapshots in cloning
- Create different types of databases, from a single source database type. For example, you can create single-instance databases, Oracle RAC databases, or Oracle RAC One Node databases from any type of source database
- Depending on the available memory and CPU cores, specify a supported database shape such as `odb1s`, `odb2`, and so on, to create any class of database from any source database.

Following are the prerequisites to clone a database:

- Ensure that Oracle Clusterware is running on all nodes, and the source database is up and running.
- The source database must use Oracle ACFS storage.
- The source database must not be a multitenant container databases (CDBs)
- The source database must be the primary database.
- The source database must be in the OPEN state.
- The source database must not be in backup mode.
- The source database must be in archive mode.

Follow this procedure to clone a database:

- Run the `odacli clone-database` command.

```
odacli clone-database --databaseUniqueName --dbname --dbshape --dbtype |
SI --json
--sourcedbname --syspassword --tdepasword
```

Specify the unique name of the database, the name for the new database, the database shape, the type of database, the source database name, password for SYS user, and the TDE Wallet password. For information about all the command options, see the *ODA CLI Command Reference* chapter.

#### Related Topics

- [odacli clone-database](#)  
Use the `odacli clone-database` command to clone a new database from a source database.

## Upgrading a Database

Use the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to upgrade an Oracle database to a different database home version.

Before upgrading to a different database home, you must upload the RDBMS database version to the repository and create the database home.

1. Log into the Web Console:  
`https://host name or ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html`
2. Click the **Database** tab.
3. Click **Actions** next to the database that you want, then select **Upgrade**.
4. Select the destination database home version from the list of available versions, then click **Upgrade**.

## Deleting a Database

Use the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to delete an Oracle database.

1. Log into the Web Console:  
`https://host name or ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html`
2. Click the **Database** tab.
3. Click **Actions** next to the database that you want, then select **Delete**.
4. Confirm the action.

## Working with Database Homes

Use the Web Console to display a list of database homes, details, and create and delete database homes.

- [About Managing Multiple Oracle Homes on Oracle Database Appliance](#)  
Create and manage one or more Oracle home directories and Oracle databases on Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Viewing Database Homes](#)  
Use the Web Console to display a list of database homes and database home details, including databases associated with a DB home.
- [Creating a Database Home](#)  
Use the Web Console to create database homes in Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Deleting a Database Home](#)  
Use the Web Console to delete an Oracle database home.

## About Managing Multiple Oracle Homes on Oracle Database Appliance

Create and manage one or more Oracle home directories and Oracle databases on Oracle Database Appliance.

Oracle home is the directory in which you install Oracle Database binaries, and from which Oracle Database runs. Oracle Database Appliance supports multiple Oracle homes, including support of different release Oracle Database homes. You can create multiple Oracle databases on a given Oracle home. Use Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to create and manage multiple Oracle homes and databases on Oracle Database Appliance. Oracle Database Appliance Manager automatically creates an Oracle Database Oracle home that is compliant with Oracle's Optimal Flexible Architecture (OFA) standards.

Check the *Oracle Database Appliance Release Notes* to obtain information about the specific Oracle software releases supported for your Oracle Database Appliance platform.

When you use ODACLI commands to create multiple homes on Oracle Database Appliance, the commands start the Oracle Home cloning process. In Oracle Database Appliance deployments, the user `oracle` is the default software installation owner.

You can use the Web Console or the command-line interface to create and manage databases.

Use ODACLI commands to create, list, describe, and delete databases on Oracle Database Appliance. The `odacli create-database` command enables you to create a database with minimal user input. When you run this command without any additional options, the command creates a new database home (ORACLE\_HOME). You can create a database in an existing home by using the `--dbhomeid` option. To find the *dbhomeid*, use the `odacli list-dbhomes` command.

Alternatively, you can use the Web Console to create list, describe and delete databases and database homes. You can display a list of all Database Homes that includes the database home name, ID, version, the date and time that the database home was created and the location on the same page. You can also create and delete database homes on the Web Console.

**▲ Caution:**

Do not apply Oracle Database patches directly to Oracle Databases on Oracle Database Appliance. Only use Oracle Database Appliance patch bundles, which are tested to work across the whole software stack. If a one-off database patch is required, it may be applied to the Oracle Home. When you apply the Oracle Database Appliance patch bundle, it may cause a conflict during future patching events and you might need to roll back and then re-apply the patch.

## Viewing Database Homes

Use the Web Console to display a list of database homes and database home details, including databases associated with a DB home.

1. Log in to the Web Console:

```
https://ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html
```

2. Click the **Database** tab.
3. Click **Database Home** on the left menu to view all database homes. The name, ID, version, location and date and time stamp of when the database home was created appears on the page.
4. (Optional) Click **Actions** next to a database home entry, then **View Databases** to see the databases that are associated with the database home.

## Creating a Database Home

Use the Web Console to create database homes in Oracle Database Appliance.

Before you can create a database home, the Oracle Database Appliance RDBMS Clone file image must be in the repository. Follow these steps to create a database home:

1. Log in to the Web Console:

```
https://ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html
```

2. Click the **Database** tab, then click **Database Home**.
3. Click **Create Database Home**.
4. Select a database version from the list of available versions, then select the database edition, either **Enterprise Edition** or **Standard Edition**, per your licensing agreement.
5. Click **Create**. When prompted, click **Yes** to confirm that you want to start the job.

## Deleting a Database Home

Use the Web Console to delete an Oracle database home.

You can delete a database home (DB Home) if it is not associated with any databases.

1. Log into the Web Console:

```
https://host name or ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html
```

2. Click the **Database** tab.
3. Click **Database Home** on the left menu to view all database homes. The name, ID, version, location and date and time stamp of when the database home was created appears on the page.
4. Click **Actions** next to a database home entry, then **Delete**, and then confirm the action to delete a database home.

## Migrating Databases

Review these topics to learn how to prepare for and migrate an entire database to your Oracle Database Appliance.

- [About Migrating Databases](#)  
You can migrate an entire active container database (CDB) or non-CDB database to an Oracle Database Appliance machine by using the RMAN duplicate command.
- [Configuring a Static Listener](#)  
Configure a static listener before you duplicate a database.
- [Migrating a Database](#)  
Use the `RMAN Duplicate` command to migrate the entire database to the appliance.
- [Registering a Database](#)  
Use the `odacli register-database` command to register the migrated database with the appliance.

## About Migrating Databases

You can migrate an entire active container database (CDB) or non-CDB database to an Oracle Database Appliance machine by using the RMAN duplicate command.

When using RMAN Duplicate, ensure to have network connectivity from source and target databases:

- Source database: The existing database to be migrated.
- Target database: The new database created on an Oracle Database Appliance environment.

If you do not have network connectivity between the source and the target environments, you can use the offline migration method. Offline migration uses RMAN backup sets for duplication, which does not require connectivity to the primary database.

At a high level, the procedure involves the following steps:

1. **Deploy or update Oracle Database Appliance to the latest version.**  
Confirm that the provisioning completed successfully. On bare metal systems, use the command `odacli list-jobs` and the command `odacli describe-job` to verify the status.
2. **Create an instance only database from the command-line interface.**



- On bare metal systems, use the command `odacli create-database` with the `instanceonly` flag on an Oracle Database Appliance machine. The new database is the target database.

Creating an instance only database also creates the following:

- ACFS Filesystem used to store the database files
- Directory structures that are required by the database instance/`rman duplicate` command
- Password file for the SYS user

3. **Configure a static listener.**
4. **Migrate the existing database to the target database using the backup and restore operations.**
5. **Register the migrated database with the appliance.**

#### Note:

You can only migrate and register a database of the same storage type. For example, to migrate and register an Oracle ACFS database, you must create an Oracle ACFS database and then migrate and register it. Similarly, to migrate an Oracle ASM database, you must create an Oracle ASM database and then migrate it.

## Configuring a Static Listener

Configure a static listener before you duplicate a database.

The static listener is only required when using RMAN Duplicate command.

Perform the following steps to manually configure the `listener.ora` file:

1. Log in as a grid user.
2. Navigate to `/u01/app/18.0.0.0/grid/network/admin/` directory.
3. Edit the default `listener.ora` file and append the static database entry.

```
SID_LIST_LISTENER=
  (SID_LIST=
    (SID_DESC=
      (GLOBAL_DBNAME=db_unique_name with domain)
      (ORACLE_HOME=db home)
      (SID_NAME=db unique name)
      (ENVS="TNS_ADMIN=database home/network/admin"))
    )
```

For example, the following file is edited for an 19.5.0.0.0 database named `PRODDB` in the `example.com` domain:

```
SID_LIST_LISTENER=
  (SID_LIST=
    (SID_DESC=
```

```
(GLOBAL_DBNAME=PRODDB.example.com)
(ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/18.0.0.0/dbhome_2)
(SID_NAME=PRODDB)
(ENVS="TNS_ADMIN=/u01/app/oracle/product/18.0.0.0/
dbhome_2/network/admin"))
)
```

4. Save the file.
5. Restart the listener.

```
srvctl stop listener -l listener
srvctl start listener -l listener
```

## Migrating a Database

Use the `RMAN Duplicate` command to migrate the entire database to the appliance.

Before migrating the database, verify that a network connection exists between the source and destination databases.

1. Verify that the `sysdba` connection to the auxiliary database is working. Use the password that you defined when you created the database with the `--instanceonly` flag.

```
sqlplus sys/password@hostname:PORT/GLOBAL_DBNAME as sysdba << EOF
select 1 from dual;
exit;
EOF
```

The following example uses the `Welcome_12` password for `myhost` on port 1521 for `PRODDB.example.com`.

```
sqlplus sys/Welcome_12@myhost:1521/PRODDB.example.com as sysdba << EOF
select 1 from dual;
exit;
EOF
```

2. As oracle user, set the `ORACLE_HOME` and `ORACLE_SID` environment variables.

```
ORACLE_HOME=path of Oracle Home against which the AUX DB is created
ORACLE_SID=database unique name
```

3. Display a list of all database storage configured on the appliance and database storage identifiers (ID).

Use the `odacli list-dbstorages` to display the storage IDs for all configured filesystems.

```
# odacli list-dbstorages
ID Type                               DBUnique Name                               Status
-----
```

```
68d13446-f26c-49ee-ab75-a393732aa88a   Asm       rdbl       Configured
ff2023d9-338d-4cff-8bb4-e73a89e32ce4   Acfs      PRODDB     Configured
```

4. Display the database storage details, including the DATA, RECO and REDO locations, for each database storage ID.

For example, use the `odacli describe-dbstorage` command to display information about the ACFS storage for ID 9fe39332-cc1a-4b4b-8393-165524a6ef6b.

```
# odacli describe-dbstorage -i ff2023d9-338d-4cff-8bb4-e73a89e32ce4
DBStorage details
-----
ID: ff2023d9-338d-4cff-8bb4-e73a89e32ce4
DB Name: PRODDB
DBUnique Name: PRODDB
DB Resource ID: c5b77384-634e-4dc8-b10b-fa2831d2c59b
Storage Type: Acfs
DATA Location: /u02/app/oracle/oradata/PRODDB
RECO Location: /u03/app/oracle/fast_recovery_area/
REDO Location: /u03/app/oracle/redo/
State: ResourceState(status=Configured)
Created: June 22, 2019 12:07:12 PM SGT
UpdatedTime: June 22, 2019 12:26:39 PM SGT
```

5. Duplicate the database.

Use the RMAN duplicate database command to duplicate the database.

```
rman target sys/Welcome__12@source database hostname:PORT
(Continued)
/Service Name auxiliary sys/Welcome_12@Hostname of the target database:
1521/service name
RUN {
SET NEWNAME FOR DATABASE TO NEW;
duplicate target database to PRODDB from active database
SPFILE
SET cluster_database 'false'
SET audit_file_dest '/u01/app/oracle/admin/PRODDB/adump'
SET db_create_file_dest '/u02/app/oracle/oradata/PRODDB'
SET db_create_online_log_dest_1 '/u03/app/oracle/redo'
SET db_recovery_file_dest '/u03/app/oracle/fast_recovery_area'
SET control_files '/tmp/control_PRODDB.ctl' nofilenamecheck;
}
```

## Registering a Database

Use the `odacli register-database` command to register the migrated database with the appliance.

The `dbclass`, `dbshape`, `servicename` and `password` are mandatory for registering the database. The `dbclass` and `dbshape` determine the `sga_target` and `pga_target` settings. The database `init.ora` parameters are reset as part of the `odacli register-database` command. Review the `init.ora` parameters after registration and ensure that the parameters set correctly.

 **Note:**

The `odacli register-database` command is supported only for primary database of type single-instance.

Follow these steps to register a database:

1. If you have Oracle Database version 12.1 with SQL patches, ensure that the `sqlpatches` are in the Oracle Database Appliance environment. If the patches are not in the environment, copy the `$OH/sqlpatch` directories from the source database home to the `$OH` in Oracle Database Appliance before executing the `odacli register-database` command

The `odacli register-database` command invokes the `datapatch` utility for applying the post patch SQLs. If the source database has any `sqlpatches` applied that are not present in the Oracle Database Appliance environment, then the `datapatch` will fail.

2. If you have Oracle Database version 11.2 with SQL patches, you must roll back any patches applied to the source database that are not part of the installed Oracle Database Bundle patch (BP).
3. Register the database with Oracle Database Appliance.

```
odacli register-database -c OLTP -s odbl -sn proddb.example.com -p
Password for SYS:
```

```
{
  "jobId" : "317b430f-ad5f-42ae-bb07-13f053d266e2",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : "August 08, 2018 05:55:49 AM EDT",
  "description" : "Database service registration with
                  db service name: proddb.example.com",
  "updatedAt" : "August 08, 2018 05:55:49 AM EDT"
}
rpandrap: ]# odacli describe-job -i "317b430f-ad5f-42ae-
bb07-13f053d266e2"
```

Job details

```
-----
ID: 317b430f-ad5f-42ae-bb07-13f053d266e2
Description: Database service registration with
             db service name: proddb.example.com
Status: Success
Created: November 23, 2018 5:55:49 AM EDT
Message:
```

Task Name	Start Time
restore control file	November 23, 2018 5:55:49 AM EDT
move spfile to right location	November 23, 2018 5:56:08 AM EDT
register DB with clusterware	November 23, 2018 5:56:13 AM EDT
reset db parameters	November 23, 2018 5:57:05 AM EDT
Running DataPatch	November 23, 2018 5:57:36 AM EDT

(Continued)

End Time	Status
November 23, 2018 5:56:08 AM EDT	Success
November 23, 2018 5:56:13 AM EDT	Success
November 23, 2018 5:57:05 AM EDT	Success
November 23, 2018 5:57:36 AM EDT	Success
November 23, 2018 5:57:49 AM EDT	Success

4. Use the `odacli list-databases` command to view the registered database.

## About Managing Multiple Database Instances Using Instance Caging

Use instance caging to manage your system resources on Oracle Database Appliance.

Oracle Database provides a method for managing CPU allocations on a multi-CPU server that runs multiple database instances. This method is called instance caging. Instance caging uses an initialization parameter to limit the number of CPUs that an instance can use simultaneously.

Instance caging and Oracle Database Resource Manager (the Resource Manager) work together to support your desired service levels across multiple instances. Consolidation can minimize idle resources, maximize efficiency, and lower costs.

Oracle Database Appliance templates are already tuned for the size of each database instance workload. They are designed to run on a specific number of cores. Instance caging ensures that each database workload is restricted to the set of cores allocated by the template, enabling multiple databases to run concurrently with no performance degradation, up to the capacity of Oracle Database Appliance. You can select database template sizes larger than your current needs to provide for planned growth.

### Note:

Oracle strongly recommends that you use the Oracle Database Appliance templates, because they implement best practices and are configured specifically for Oracle Database Appliance.

The Oracle Database Appliance Manager interface refers to the database sizing templates as database classes.

By default, instance caging is not enabled on Oracle Database Appliance. To enable instance caging, set the initialization parameter, `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN`, for each database on Oracle Database Appliance. The parameter specifies the plan to be used by the Resource Manager for the current instance. Setting this parameter directs the Resource Manager to allocate core resources among databases. If a plan is not specified with this parameter, then the Resource Manager and instance caging are not enabled.

Instance caging allocation of core resources is enabled in accordance with the Oracle Database Appliance database template size that you select for each database. The `CPU_COUNT` initialization parameter is set in the template. Use the `CPU_COUNT` setting that matches the size of each database to consolidate, and follow the standard instructions for configuring instance caging.

## Oracle EM Express and DB Console

You can use Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Express (EM Express), or the Database Control Console (DB Console) to manage your database.

The EM Express console is available for Oracle Database 18c, 12.2.0.1, and 12.1.0.2. The DB Console is available for Oracle Database 11.2.0.4. Both consoles are web-based tools for managing Oracle Databases.

The EM Express console provides the following features:

- Support for basic administrative tasks, such as storage and user management
- Comprehensive solutions for performance diagnostics and tuning
- Performance advisors in a graphic user interface
- Oracle Database utilities in a graphic user interface, such as SQL\*Loader and Oracle Recovery Manager (RMAN)

EM Express is built inside the database server and cannot perform actions outside the database.

# 8

## Managing Storage

Understand the storage options and how to manage storage for your Oracle Database Appliance deployment.

- [About Managing Storage](#)  
You can add storage at any time without shutting down your databases or applications.
- [Storage on Single Node Platforms](#)  
Review storage options on Oracle Database Appliance single node platforms.
- [Storage on Multi Node Platforms](#)  
Review storage options on Oracle Database Appliance multi node platforms.

### About Managing Storage

You can add storage at any time without shutting down your databases or applications.

Oracle Database Appliance uses raw storage to protect data in the following ways:

- **Fast Recovery Area (FRA) backup.** FRA is a storage area (directory on disk or Oracle ASM diskgroup) that contains redo logs, control file, archived logs, backup pieces and copies, and flashback logs.
- **Mirroring.** Double or triple mirroring provides protection against mechanical issues.

The amount of available storage is determined by the location of the FRA backup (external or internal) and if double or triple mirroring is used. External NFS storage is supported for online backups, data staging, or additional database files.

Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M and X7-2-HA models provide storage expansion options from the base configuration. In addition, Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA multi-node platforms have an optional storage expansion shelf.

When you add storage, Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) automatically rebalances the data across all of the storage including the new drives. Rebalancing a disk group moves data between disks to ensure that every file is evenly spread across all of the disks in a disk group and all of the disks are evenly filled to the same percentage. Oracle ASM automatically initiates a rebalance after storage configuration changes, such as when you add disks.

The redundancy level for FLASH is based on the DATA and RECO selection. If you choose High redundancy (triple mirroring), then FLASH is also High redundancy.

**⚠ WARNING:**

Pulling a drive before powering it off will crash the kernel, which can lead to data corruption. Do not pull the drive when the LED is an amber or green color. When you need to replace an NVMe drive, use the software to power off the drive before pulling the drive from the slot. If you have more than one disk to replace, complete the replacement of one disk before starting replacement of the next disk.

See “Adding Optional Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA Storage Shelf Drives (CRU)” in the Oracle Database Appliance Service Manual for disk placement.

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Optional Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA Storage Shelf Drives \(CRU\)](#)

## Storage on Single Node Platforms

Review storage options on Oracle Database Appliance single node platforms.

- [Storage Options for Single Node Systems](#)  
Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M have NVMe storage configurations with storage expansion options.
- [Adding NVMe Storage Disks](#)  
Depending on the available drives, you can expand Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M storage to add NVMe disks or replace existing NVMe disks.

## Storage Options for Single Node Systems

Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M have NVMe storage configurations with storage expansion options.

**Table 8-1 Storage Options for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M**

Configuration	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M
Base Configuration	Two (2) 6.4TB NVMe drives populated in slots 0 and 1.	Two (2) 6.4TB NVMe drives populated in slots 0 and 1.



**Table 8-1 (Cont.) Storage Options for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M**

Configuration	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M
Expansion Options	None	Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Three (3) 6.4TB NVMe drives populated in slots 2 to 4. Order Qty 1 - 7117431 (3-pack 6.4TB NVMe SSD) and upgrade to Oracle Database Appliance release 12.2.1.4 or later.</li> <li>• Six (6) 6.4TB NVMe drives populated in slots 2 to 7. Order Qty 2 - 7117431 (3-pack 6.4TB NVMe SSD) and upgrade to Oracle Database Appliance release 12.2.1.4 or later.</li> </ul>

## Adding NVMe Storage Disks

Depending on the available drives, you can expand Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M storage to add NVMe disks or replace existing NVMe disks.

Use the ODAADMCLI commands to perform appliance storage maintenance tasks, including perform storage diagnostics and collect diagnostic logs for storage components.

### Preparing for a Storage Upgrade

1. Update Oracle Database Appliance to the latest Patch Bundle before expanding storage.

```
# odacli describe-component
```

2. Check the disk health of the existing storage disks.

Use the default checks option to check the `NetworkComponents`, `OSDiskStorage`, `SharedStorage`, and `SystemComponents`

```
# odaadmcli validate -d
```

3. Run the `odaadmcli show diskgroup` command to display and review Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) disk group information.

4. Use `orachk` to confirm Oracle ASM and CRS health.

Review and perform these best practices before adding storage.

## Adding NVMe Storage Disks

The default configuration for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S or X7-2M includes two (2) NVMe disks. You cannot expand storage for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S.

For Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M, you can expand storage by adding three (3) additional disks for a total of five (5) NVMe disks or by adding six (6) additional disks for a total of eight (8) NVMe disks. When you expand storage, adding just one or two NVMe drives is **not** supported.

### ⚠ WARNING:

Pulling a drive before powering it off will crash the kernel, which can lead to data corruption. Do not pull the drive when the LED is an amber or green color. When you need to replace an NVMe drive, use the software to power off the drive before pulling the drive from the slot. If you have more than one disk to replace, complete the replacement of one disk before starting replacement of the next disk.

Follow these steps to add NVMe storage disks:

1. Before adding the NVMe disks, ensure that the current disks are online in `oakd` and Oracle ASM. Otherwise, the prechecks fail. For example, for 3-disks expansion from slots 2 to 4, the disks in slots 0 and 1 must be online in Oracle ASM and `oakd`. For 3-disks expansion from slots 5 to 7 when slots 0 to 4 are filled, then all disks in slots 0 to 4 must be online. For 6-disks expansion from slots 2 to 7, all disks in slots 0 and 1 must be online.
2. Insert disks one at a time in the slots and power on the device. For example, to add three (3) NVMe disks, insert the disks in slots 2 to 4. To add six (6) NVMe drives, insert the disks in slots 2 to 7.

```
# odaadmcli power disk on slot_number
```

For example, when adding three (3) NVMe disks:

```
# odaadmcli power disk on pd_02
# odaadmcli power disk on pd_03
# odaadmcli power disk on pd_04
```

Allow at least one minute between inserting each disk.

3. Run the `odaadmcli expand storage` command to add the new storage drives:

```
# odaadmcli expand storage -ndisk number_of_disks
```

For example, to add three (3) NVMe drives:

```
#odaadmcli expand storage -ndisk 3
Precheck passed.
Check the progress of expansion of storage by executing 'odaadmcli show
```

```
disk'  
Waiting for expansion to finish ...
```

4. Run the `odaadmcli show disk` command to ensure that all disks are listed, are online, and are in a good state.

```
# odaadmcli show disk
```

## Storage on Multi Node Platforms

Review storage options on Oracle Database Appliance multi node platforms.

- [About Expanding Storage on Multi-Node Systems](#)  
Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA platforms have options for high performance and high capacity storage configurations.
- [Preparing for a Storage Upgrade](#)  
Review and perform these best practices before adding storage to the base shelf or adding the expansion shelf.
- [Preparing for a Storage Upgrade for a Virtualized Platform](#)  
Review and perform these best practices before adding storage to the base shelf or adding the expansion shelf.
- [Adding Solid-State Drives \(SSDs\) for Data Storage](#)  
Add a pack of solid-state drives (SSDs) for data storage into the existing Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA base configuration to fully populate the base storage shelf.
- [Adding the Storage Expansion Shelf](#)  
After the base storage shelf is fully populated, you can add the storage expansion shelf to expand your data storage on your multi-node platform.

## About Expanding Storage on Multi-Node Systems

Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA platforms have options for high performance and high capacity storage configurations.

The base configuration has 16 TB SSD raw storage for DATA and 3.2 TB SSD raw storage for REDO, leaving 15 available slots to expand the storage. If you choose to expand the storage, you can fill the 15 slots with either SSD or HDD drives. For even more storage, you can add a storage expansion shelf to double the storage capacity of your appliance.

In all configurations, the base storage and the storage expansion shelf each have four (4) 800 GB SSDs for REDO disk group and five (5) 3.2TB SSDs (either for DATA/RECO in the SSD option or FLASH in the HDD option).

### Note:

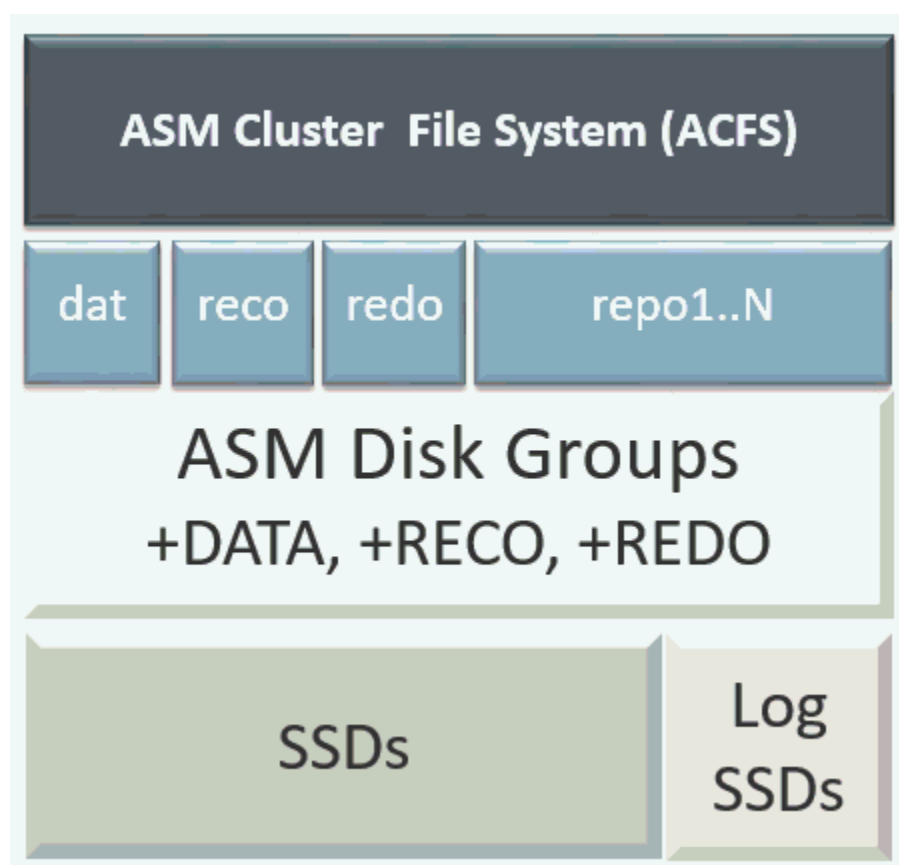
The base storage shelf must be fully populated before you can add an expansion shelf and the expansion shelf must have the same storage configuration as the base shelf. Once you select a base configuration, you cannot change the type of storage expansion.

### High Performance

A high performance configuration uses solid state drives (SSDs) for DATA and REDO storage. The base configuration has 16 TB SSD raw storage for DATA and 3.2 TB SSD raw storage for REDO.

You can add up to three (3) 5-Pack SSDs on the base configuration, for a total of 64 TB SSD raw storage. If you need more storage, you can double the capacity by adding an expansion shelf of SSD drives. The expansion shelf provides an additional 64 TB SSD raw storage for DATA, 3.2 TB SSD raw storage for REDO, and 16 TB SDD raw storage for FLASH.

Adding an expansion shelf requires that the base storage shelf and expansion shelf are fully populated with SSD drives. When you expand the storage using only SSD, there is no downtime.



### High Capacity

A high capacity configuration uses a combination of SSD and HDD drives.

The base configuration has 16 TB SSD raw storage for DATA and 3.2 TB SSD raw storage for REDO.

The following expansion options are available:

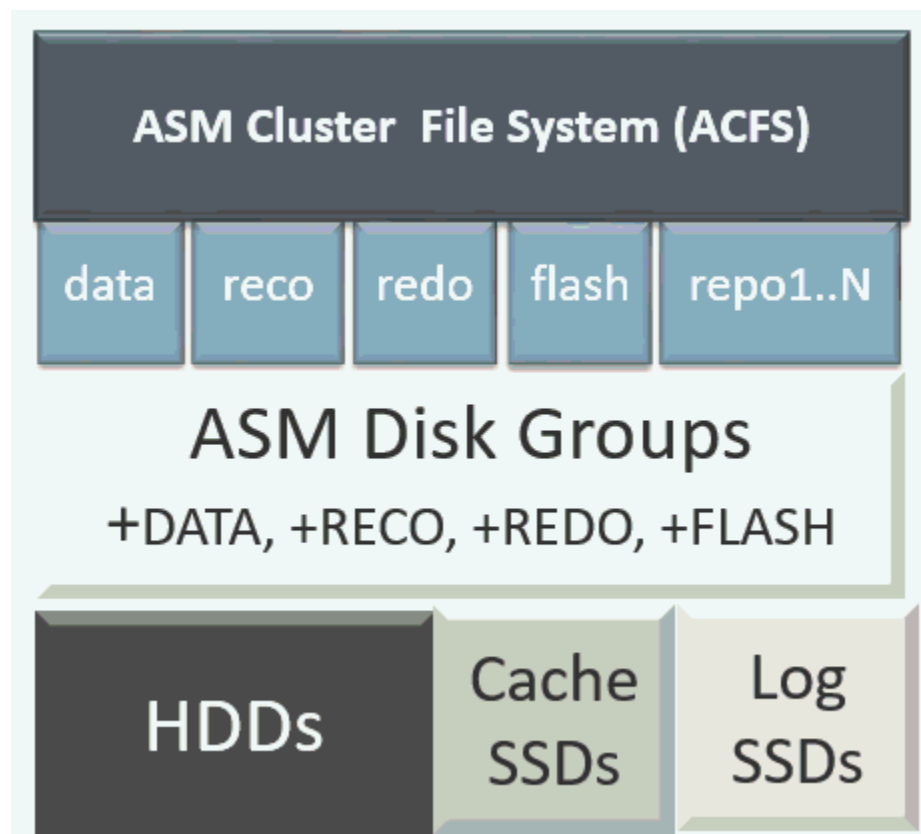
- Base shelf: additional 150 TB HDD raw storage for DATA (15 pack of 10 TB HDDs.)

- HDD Expansion shelf: additional 150 TB HDD raw storage for DATA, 3.2 TB SSD for REDO, and 16 TB SSD for FLASH
- Expansion Storage shelf: additional shelf storage configuration must be identical to the storage configuration of the base shelf. See the topic “*Adding the Storage Expansion Shelf*” in this chapter, for the procedure to add the storage expansion shelf.

 **Note:**

When you expand storage to include HDD on the base storage shelf, you must reposition the drives to the correct slots and redeploy the appliance after adding the HDD drives.

A system fully configured for high capacity has 300 TB HDD raw storage for DATA, 6.4 TB SSD raw storage for REDO and 32 TB SSD for Flash.



**Table 8-2 Storage Options for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA**

Configura tion	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA Base Configuration	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA SSD Only Configuration for High Performance	Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA SSD and HDD Configuration for High Capacity
Base Configurati on	Four (4) 800GB SSDs populated in slots 20 to 23. Five (5) 3.2TB SSDs populated in slots 0 to 4.	JBOD: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Four (4) 800GB SSD</li> <li>Twenty (20) 3.2TB SSD</li> </ul>	JBOD: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Four (4) 800GB SSD</li> <li>Five (5) 3.2TB SSD</li> <li>Fifteen (15) 10TB HDD</li> </ul>
Base Shelf Expansion Options	Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Options to fully populate the base configuration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Up to three 5- packs of 3.2 TB populated in slots 5 to 19 (part number 7117369; quantity 1, 2, or 3)</li> <li>If the base is not fully populated with SSD, you can order 15 x 10TB HDD to the base. (part number 7117704)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must redeploy Oracle Database Appliance if you choose this option.</p>	Up to three 5-packs of 3.2TB SSDs populated in slots 5 to 19. Order Qty 1, 2, or 3: 7117369: Five 3.2TB SSD drive-pack and upgrade to Oracle Database Appliance release 12.2.1.4 or later.	Five (5) 3.2TB SSDs populated in slots 15 to 19. Fifteen 10TB HDDs populated in slots 0 to 14. Order Qty 1: 7117704: Fifteen 10TB HDD drive- pack and upgrade to Oracle Database Appliance release 12.2.1.4 or later.
Storage Expansion Shelf	You can only add an expansion shelf with the same storage configuration as the base configuration	Expansion Shelf with four (4) 800GB SSDs and twenty (20) 3.2TB SSDs. Order Qty 1 - 7119675 - Twenty 3.2 TB SSDs and four 800 GB SSDs and upgrade to Oracle Database Appliance release 18.5 or later.	Expansion Shelf with four (4) 800GB SSDs, five (5) 3.2TB SSDs and fifteen (15) 10TB HDDs. Order Qty 1 - 7119676 - fifteen 10 TB HDDs, five 3.2 TB SSDs, and four 800 GB SSDs and upgrade to Oracle Database Appliance release 18.5 or later.

## Preparing for a Storage Upgrade

Review and perform these best practices before adding storage to the base shelf or adding the expansion shelf.

1. Update Oracle Database Appliance to the latest Patch Bundle before expanding storage.

2. Confirm both nodes are at the same version and patch bundle level for software and firmware.

```
# odacli describe-component
```

3. Check the disk health of the existing storage disks.

Run the check on both nodes and use the default checks option to check the NetworkComponents, OSDiskStorage, SharedStorage, and SystemComponents.

```
# odaadmcli validate -d
```

4. Run the `odaadmcli show diskgroup` command on each node to display and review Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) disk group information.

```
# odaadmcli show diskgroup DATA
```

```
# odaadmcli show diskgroup RECO
```

```
# odaadmcli show diskgroup REDO
```

5. Confirm Oracle ASM and CRS health on both nodes.

Run `orachk` on each node. If there is a problem connecting to either node, then check the `/etc/bashrc` file and remove (or remark out) any values in the profile for `root`; `oracle`; `grid` users

6. Confirm communications between the nodes and that SSH is working using the same password for `oracle`, `root` and `grid`.

From each node:

- a. ssh to both nodes.
  - b. Ping both nodes.
7. Confirm there is at least 10 GB of space available on each node.

```
[root@oda]# df -h
```

```
[root@odb]# df -h
```

## Preparing for a Storage Upgrade for a Virtualized Platform

Review and perform these best practices before adding storage to the base shelf or adding the expansion shelf.

1. Update Oracle Database Appliance to the latest Patch Bundle before expanding storage.

2. Confirm both nodes are at the same version and patch bundle level for software and firmware.

```
# oakcli show version -detail
```

```
#oakcli inventory -q
```

 **Note:**

If oakd is not running on either node, fix the problem before adding storage.

3. Check the disk health of the existing storage disks.

Run the check on both nodes and use the default checks option to check the NetworkComponents, OSDiskStorage, SharedStorage, and SystemComponents.

```
# oakcli validate -d
```

4. Run the command `oakcli show diskgroup` on each node to display and review Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) disk group information.

```
# oakcli show diskgroup data
```

```
# oakcli show diskgroup reco
```

```
# oakcli show diskgroup redo
```

5. Confirm Oracle ASM and CRS health on both nodes.

Run the `oakcli orachk` command on each node. If there is a problem connecting to either node, then check the `/etc/bashrc` file and remove (or remark out) any values in the profile for `root`; `oracle`; `grid` users

Run `oakcli orachk` on Node 0:

```
# oakcli orachk
...
Checking Status of Oracle Software Stack - Clusterware, ASM, RDBMS
. . . . .
-----
-
Oracle Stack Status
-----
-
Host Name CRS Installed ASM HOME RDBMS Installed CRS UP ASM UP RDBMS UP DB Instance Name
-----
-
odax3rml Yes No Yes No No No No .....
-----
-
...

```



Run `oakcli orachk` on Node 1:

```
# oakcli orachk
...

Checking Status of Oracle Software Stack - Clusterware, ASM, RDBMS

-----
-
Oracle Stack Status
-----
-
Host Name CRS Installed ASM HOME RDBMS Installed CRS UP ASM UP RDBMS UP DB Instance Name
-----
-
odax3rm2 Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes b22S2 b23S2
b24S2
-----
-
...
```

6. Confirm communications between the nodes and that SSH is working using the same password for `oracle`, `root` and `grid`.

From each node:

- a. `ssh` to both nodes.
  - b. Ping both nodes.
7. Confirm that there is at least 10 GB of space available on each node.

```
[root@oda]# df -h
```

```
[root@odb]# df -h
```

## Adding Solid-State Drives (SSDs) for Data Storage

Add a pack of solid-state drives (SSDs) for data storage into the existing Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA base configuration to fully populate the base storage shelf.

If you need to add storage to the base configuration, you can order one, two, or three 5-pack of SSDs to complete the base configuration on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA.

You must fully populate the base configuration before you can add an expansion shelf. If you add an expansion shelf, the shelf must have the same disk storage configuration.

 **Note:**

You can only add SSDs to the base storage shelf, for a high-performance configuration. For high-capacity configuration, you can expand storage to use HDDs, or add a storage expansion shelf.

Before adding the disks to the system, ensure that Oracle Database Appliance is on the latest update version.

1. Insert disks one at a time in the slots.

To add one 5-pack of SSDs, insert the disks in slots 5 to 9. To add two 5-pack of SSDs, insert the disks in slots 5 to 14. To add three 5-pack of SSDs, insert the disks in slots 5 to 19.

 **Note:**

Allow at least one minute between inserting each disk.

After all disks are added, go to Step 2.

2. Run the `odaadmcli show ismaster` command to determine which node is the master.

```
# odaadmcli show ismaster
```

3. Run the `odaadmcli expand storage` command on the master node.

```
#odaadmcli expand storage -ndisk number of disks to be added
-enclosure enclosure number of the disks to be added, either 0 or 1
```

For example:

```
#odaadmcli expand storage -ndisk 5 -enclosure 0
Precheck passed.
Check the progress of expansion of storage by executing 'odaadmcli show
disk'
Waiting for expansion to finish ...
```

It takes 10 to 12 minutes to add all of the disks to the configuration.

4. Run the `odaadmcli show disk` command to ensure that all disks are listed, are online, and are in a good state.

```
# odaadmcli show disk
```

5. Verify that the disks in slots 5 to 9 are added to Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM).
  - a. Run the `asm_script` to verify that the disks in slots 5 to 9 are added to Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM). If the 5 disks are successfully added (CACHED and MEMBER), then go to Step 7.

```
su grid user /opt/oracle/oak/bin/stordiag/asm_script.sh 1 6
```

For example:

```
#/opt/oracle/oak/bin/stordiag/asm_script.sh 1 6 | grep CACHED
.....
/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S05_1399652120p1 SSD_E0_S05_1399652120P1 1
NORMAL ONLINE CACHED MEMBER
```

```

/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S05_1399652120p2 SSD_E0_S05_1399652120P2 3
NORMAL ONLINE CACHED MEMBER
/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S06_1399645200p1 SSD_E0_S06_1399645200P1 1
NORMAL ONLINE CACHED MEMBER
/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S06_1399645200p2 SSD_E0_S06_1399645200P2 3
NORMAL ONLINE CACHED MEMBER
/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S07_1399646692p1 SSD_E0_S07_1399646692P1 1
NORMAL ONLINE CACHED MEMBER
/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S07_1399646692p2 SSD_E0_S07_1399646692P2 3
NORMAL ONLINE CACHED MEMBER
/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S08_1399649840p1 SSD_E0_S08_1399649840P1 1
NORMAL ONLINE CACHED MEMBER
/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S08_1399649840p2 SSD_E0_S08_1399649840P2 3
NORMAL ONLINE CACHED MEMBER
/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S09_1399649424p1 SSD_E0_S09_1399649424P1 1
NORMAL ONLINE CACHED MEMBER
/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S09_1399649424p2 SSD_E0_S09_1399649424P2 3
NORMAL ONLINE CACHED MEMBER

```

- b. If the disks are not added to Oracle ASM, then add them manually. As `grid` user, execute the `sqlplus '/as sysasm'` command on the master node to add the disks to Oracle ASM.

For a system without Oracle Automatic Storage Management Filter Driver (Oracle ASM Filter Driver) configured, add the Oracle ASM disks as follows:

```

SQL> alter diskgroup /*+ _OAK_AsmCookie */ data add disk
'/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S05_1399764284p1' name SSD_E0_S05_1399764284p1,
'/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S06_1399765076p1' name SSD_E0_S06_1399765076p1,
'/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S07_1399765116p1' name SSD_E0_S07_1399765116p1,
'/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S08_1399765484p1' name SSD_E0_S08_1399765484p1,
'/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S09_1399765504p1' name
SSD_E0_S09_1399765504p1;

```

```

SQL> alter diskgroup /*+ _OAK_AsmCookie */ reco add disk
'/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S05_1399764284p2' name SSD_E0_S05_1399764284p2,
'/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S06_1399765076p2' name SSD_E0_S06_1399765076p2,
'/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S07_1399765116p2' name SSD_E0_S07_1399765116p2,
'/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S08_1399765484p2' name SSD_E0_S08_1399765484p2,
'/dev/mapper/SSD_E0_S09_1399765504p2' name
SSD_E0_S09_1399765504p2;

```

For a system with Oracle Automatic Storage Management Filter Driver (Oracle ASM Filter Driver) configured, add the Oracle ASM disks as follows:

```

SQL> alter diskgroup /*+ _OAK_AsmCookie */ data add disk
'AFD:SSD_E0_S05_1399764284P1' name SSD_E0_S05_1399764284p1,
'AFD:SSD_E0_S06_1399765076P1' name SSD_E0_S06_1399765076p1,
'AFD:SSD_E0_S07_1399765116P1' name SSD_E0_S07_1399765116p1,
'AFD:SSD_E0_S08_1399765484P1' name SSD_E0_S08_1399765484p1,
'AFD:SSD_E0_S09_1399765504P1' name SSD_E0_S09_1399765504p1;

```

```

SQL> alter diskgroup /*+ _OAK_AsmCookie */ reco add disk

```

```
'AFD:SSD_E0_S05_1399764284P2' name SSD_E0_S05_1399764284p2,  
'AFD:SSD_E0_S06_1399765076P2' name SSD_E0_S06_1399765076p2,  
'AFD:SSD_E0_S07_1399765116P2' name SSD_E0_S07_1399765116p2,  
'AFD:SSD_E0_S08_1399765484P2' name SSD_E0_S08_1399765484p2,  
'AFD:SSD_E0_S09_1399765504P2' name SSD_E0_S09_1399765504p2;
```

6. Use the `odaadmcli show validation storage errors` command to show hard storage errors.

Hard errors include having the wrong type of disk inserted into a particular slot, an invalid disk model, or an incorrect disk size.

```
# odaadmcli show validation storage errors
```

7. Use the `odaadmcli show validation storage failures` command to show soft validation errors.

A typical soft disk error would be an invalid version of the disk firmware.

```
# odaadmcli show validation storage failures
```

8. Confirm that the `oak_storage_conf.xml` file shows 24 on both nodes.

```
#cat /opt/oracle/oak/conf/oak_storage_conf.xml
```

## Adding the Storage Expansion Shelf

After the base storage shelf is fully populated, you can add the storage expansion shelf to expand your data storage on your multi-node platform.

The expansion shelf is available on Oracle Database Appliance multi-node platforms, such as Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA. The addition of the storage expansion shelf includes checks across both nodes. It is important to confirm that SSH does work across the nodes and all users can connect as expected using their shared password.

You must fully populate the base configuration before you can add an expansion shelf. If you add an expansion shelf, the shelf must have the same disk storage configuration as the base storage shelf.



### Note:

Oracle recommends that you add a storage expansion shelf when you have relatively little activity on your databases. When the system discovers the new storage, Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) automatically rebalances the disk groups. The rebalance operation may degrade database performance until the operation completes.

1. Install and cable the storage expansion shelf, but do **not** power on the expansion shelf.

**▲ Caution:**

Review cabling instructions carefully to ensure that you have carried out cabling correctly. Incorrect connections can cause data loss when adding a storage expansion shelf to Oracle Database Appliance with existing databases.

2. If this is a new deployment or re-image of Oracle Database Appliance, perform the following steps in order:
  - a. Power on the base storage.
  - b. Power on Node 0.
  - c. Power on Node 1.

**▲ Caution:**

Do not power on the expansion shelf yet.

3. Verify that both nodes plus the base storage shelf are up and running. Log into each server node and run the `odacli validate-storagetopology` command to confirm that the base configuration cabling is correct.

```
odacli validate-storagetopology
...
INFO : Check if JBOD powered on
SUCCESS : JBOD : Powered-
on
INFO : Check for correct number of EBODS(2 or 4)
SUCCESS : EBOD found :
2
INFO : Check for overall status of cable
validation on Node0
SUCCESS : Overall Cable Validation on Node0
SUCCESS : JBOD Nickname set correctly : Oracle Database Appliance -
E0
```

The correct results will confirm if the two server nodes are properly cabled to the base storage shelf and all disks are online, with a good status, and added to the existing disk groups on both nodes. If there any failures, then fix the cabling before proceeding to the next step.

**✎ Note:**

If the output shows that `EBOD found` is 2, then you only have the base storage shelf. If `EBOD found` is 4, then you have a base storage shelf and an expansion shelf.

4. Power on the storage expansion shelf.
5. Log in to each server node and run the `odacli validate-storagetopology` command to validate the storage cabling and confirm that the new storage shelf is recognized.

```
# odacli validate-storagetopology

INFO      : Check if JBOD powered on
SUCCESS   : 2JBOD : Powered-
on
INFO      : Check for correct number of EBODS(2 or 4)
SUCCESS   : EBOD found :
4
...
...

INFO      : Check for overall status of cable validation on Node0
SUCCESS   : Overall Cable Validation on Node0
SUCCESS   : JBOD0 Nickname set correctly : Oracle Database Appliance -
E0
SUCCESS   : JBOD1 Nickname set correctly : Oracle Database Appliance -
E1
```

Look for the following indicators that both storage shelves are recognized:

- When there are two shelves, the JBOD (just a bunch of disks) is numbered. For example:

```
SUCCESS : 2JBOD : Powered-on
```

- When both shelves are recognized, the EBOD found value is 4.

```
SUCCESS : EBOD found : 4
```

- When the expansion shelf is cabled properly, the nickname is E1. For example:

```
SUCCESS : JBOD0 Nickname set correctly : Oracle Database
Appliance - E0
SUCCESS : JBOD1 Nickname set correctly : Oracle Database
Appliance - E1
```

Fix any errors before proceeding.

6. Run the `odaadmcli show disk` command to ensure that all disks in the expansion shelf are listed, are online, and are in a good state.

```
# odaadmcli show disk
```

When all disks are online and in a good state, proceed to the next step.

7. Run the `odaadmcli show enclosure` command to check the health of components in expansion shelf.

```
# odaadmcli show enclosure
```

8. Run the `odaadmcli show ismaster` command on Node 0 to confirm that Node 0 is the master.

```
# odaadmcli show ismaster
```

9. Run the `odaadmcli expand storage` command on the master node.

```
#odaadmcli expand storage -ndisk 24 -enclosure 1
```

```
Precheck passed.
```

```
Check the progress of expansion of storage by executing 'odaadmcli show disk'
```

```
Waiting for expansion to finish ...
```

It takes approximately 10 to 12 minutes to add all of the disks to the configuration.

10. Use the `odaadmcli show validation storage errors` command to show hard storage errors.

Hard errors include having the wrong type of disk inserted into a particular slot, an invalid disk model, or an incorrect disk size.

```
# odaadmcli show validation storage errors
```

11. Use the `odaadmcli show validation storage failures` command to show soft validation errors.

A typical soft disk error would be an invalid version of the disk firmware.

```
# odaadmcli show validation storage failures
```

12. Run the `odacli describe-component` command to verify that all firmware components in the storage expansion are current.

```
# odaadmcli describe-component
```

13. If needed, update the storage shelf and then run the `odacli describe-component` command to confirm that the firmware is current.

```
# odaadmcli update
```

```
# odaadmcli describe-component
```

# 9

## Managing Networks

View the public and private networks that are configured on your Oracle Database Appliance.

- [About Network Infrastructure and VLANs on Oracle Database Appliance](#)  
Learn about networks and virtual local area networks (VLANs) on the appliance.
- [Viewing Configured Networks and Network Interfaces](#)  
Use the Web Console to display a list of configured networks, network details and interfaces.
- [Creating a Network](#)  
Create a new network for the appliance.
- [Creating a Non-Bonded Physical Network](#)  
For a non-bonded network configuration, you can create a physical network on the unused physical interface.
- [Updating a Network](#)  
Update a network to revise the IP address, subnet mask, gateway, or type of network.
- [Deleting a Network](#)  
Delete a configured network.

## About Network Infrastructure and VLANs on Oracle Database Appliance

Learn about networks and virtual local area networks (VLANs) on the appliance.

Oracle Database Appliance has two dual-port public network interfaces (either copper or fiber), which are bonded. The network interface is `bt.bond0` in single- and multi-node platforms.

You can only enable one of the interfaces in a bonded network. You can use the bonded network to manage VLANs, or you can break the bond and create two separate physical network interfaces (non-bonded network configuration) in your data center.

### Note:

To create a second network, you must configure, or plumb, the initial network as a non-bonded network before deploying the appliance. You cannot use VLANs on a non-bonded network.

Use the Web Console to display all physical and virtual networks. For multi-node systems, the IP addresses for Node 0 and Node 1 cannot be the same.



## Virtual Local Area Networks (VLANs)

Oracle Database Appliance supports multiple virtual local area networks (VLANs) on the same network port or bond. VLANs are multiple logical networks that are created from a single physical network switch port, providing network security isolation for multiple workloads that share a common network. For example, application, backup, and management networks. Each VLAN acts as an independent logical network operating with other VLANs over the same physical connection. The VLAN tag associated with the data packet and network define the network. You can create a collection of isolated networks to enhance network security and bandwidth and keep data packets separated.

The network interfaces differ, depending on your Oracle Database Appliance hardware. The VLAN is created on `btbond0` in single- and multi-node platforms. In all cases, connections to user domains are through the selected interfaces. A switch that supports tagged VLANs uses VLAN IDs to identify the packet, including to which network the packet belongs.

 **Note:**

To use VLANs with Oracle Database Appliance, you must configure the VLANs before you deploy the appliance.

The Web Console enables you to create, list, and delete VLANs on the appliance. For multi-node systems, you can use the Web Console to create a VLAN on both nodes of the appliance. To create a VLAN on a specific node, use the command-line interface.

For a bare metal deployment, use the Web Console or `odaadmcli` commands to manage the following types of VLANs:

- **Public:** For public access. This is the default public interface.
- **Backup:** For backup operations.
- **Management:** For management traffic.
- **Custom:** For usage defined by the customer. For example, for applications.

The public VLAN is setup when you configure the first network using the command `configure-firstnet`. You can set up only one public VLAN. Use the command-line interface to create other VLANs. For multi-node systems, the IP addresses for Node 0 and Node 1 cannot be the same. Oracle Database Appliance does not support Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) to provide IP addresses, subnet mask and default gateway.

## Non-Bonded Network Configuration

When you plumb the network for deployment, you can choose to use a bonded network, or you can choose to break the bond to create a non-bonded network configuration. The non-bonded network enables you to create a physical network on the unused physical interface.

When you use the command `configure first-net` to plumb the network as a non-bonded interface, there are two physical network interfaces, `em2` and `em3`. One of

the interfaces is for the public network, the second interface is available for you to create a network.

To create a second network, you must configure, or plumb, the initial network as a non-bonded network before deploying the appliance.

## Viewing Configured Networks and Network Interfaces

Use the Web Console to display a list of configured networks, network details and interfaces.

1. Click the **Appliance** tab in the Web Console.
2. Click the **Network** tab in the left navigation to display a list of configured networks.

When the appliance is a multi-node system, tabs named **Node0** and **Node1** appear in the right corner, below the **Refresh** button. Click a tab to display network details for each node.

Network Name	Interface Name	Interface Type	Network Type	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Gateway	Node Number	Status	Actions
vlan126	btbond1.126	VLAN	Other	10.31.129.120	255.255.255.240	10.31.129.125	0	CONFIGURED	Actions
yihu1	sfpbond1	PHYSICAL	Backup	192.0.2.254	255.255.255.252	192.0.2.100	0	CONFIGURED	Actions
Private-network	priv0		Private	192.0.2.250	255.255.255.240		0	CONFIGURED	Actions
Public-network	btbond1		Public	10.30.99.99	255.255.252.0	10.30.90.10	0	CONFIGURED	Actions

3. Click **Show Interfaces** in the upper left corner of the Network page to display a list of network interfaces.

When the appliance is a multi-node system, tabs named **Node0** and **Node1** appear in the right corner, below the **Refresh** button. Click a tab to display the interfaces for each node.

Show Networks		Show Interfaces	
search <input type="text"/>		Sort by: Created: New to Old <input type="button" value="Refresh"/>	
Page 1 of 2 (1-7 of 8 items) <input type="button" value="K"/> < 1 2 > <input type="button" value="X"/>			
btbond1.126	Created: Fri Dec 08 2017 2:46:21 AM Interface Members: btbond1.126	Interface Type: VLAN	Status: CONFIGURED
sfpbond1	Created: Thu Dec 07 2017 12:59:53 AM Interface Members: p3p1,p3p2	Interface Type: BOND	Status: CONFIGURED
em2	Created: Thu Dec 07 2017 12:59:53 AM Interface Members: em2	Interface Type: PHYSICAL	Status: CONFIGURED
p3p1	Created: Thu Dec 07 2017 12:59:53 AM Interface Members: p3p1	Interface Type: PHYSICAL	Status: CONFIGURED

4. Click **Show Networks** to go back to the network view.

## Creating a Network

Create a new network for the appliance.

When naming a network, you can use alphanumeric characters, dashes (-) and underscores (\_). The network name cannot exceed 40 characters and must begin with an alpha character.

1. Click the **Appliance** tab in the Web Console.
2. Click the **Network** tab in the left navigation to display a list of configured networks.
3. If the appliance is a multi-node system, the Web Console helps you create the network for both nodes at the same time.
4. Click **Create Network** in the upper right corner.
5. Enter the network information in the required fields. The Interface field has a drop-down menu with available choices. The Subnet Mask field has a drop-down menu with available choices and a search box. Optionally, enter a Gateway IP address and select an option from the Network Type list. The network type helps to identify if the network is for backup, database, dataguard, management, private, or other. Click **Create**.

The screenshot shows the 'Create New Network' form in the Oracle Web Console. The form is titled 'Create New Network' and is located under the 'Appliance' tab. It contains several input fields: 'Name \*', 'Interface \*' (a dropdown menu), 'Subnet Mask \*' (a dropdown menu with '255.255.255.252' selected), 'IP Address \*', 'Gateway', and 'Network Type' (a dropdown menu with 'Backup' selected). At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel' and 'Create' buttons.

## Creating a Non-Bonded Physical Network

For a non-bonded network configuration, you can create a physical network on the unused physical interface.

If you plumbed the network as a non-bonded interface, you create two physical network interfaces, `em2` and `em3`. One interface is the public network, the second interface is available for you to create a network.

### Note:

To create a second network, you must configure, or plumb, the initial network as a non-bonded network before deploying the appliance. You cannot use VLANs on a non-bonded network.

1. Click the **Appliance** tab in the Web Console.
2. Click the **Network** tab in the left navigation to display a list of configured networks.
3. If the appliance is a single-node system, click **Create Network** in the upper right corner. If the appliance is a multi-node system, go to Step 4.
  - a. Enter the network information in the required fields. The Interface field has a drop-down menu with available choices. The Subnet Mask field has a drop-down menu with available choices and a search box. Optionally, enter a Gateway IP address and select an option from the Network Type list. The network type helps to identify if the network is for backup, database, dataguard, management, private, or other.

The screenshot shows the Oracle Database Appliance Web Console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Appliance', 'Database', 'Object Store', and 'Activity'. The left sidebar shows 'Appliance' with sub-items 'Appliance', 'Network', 'Oracle ASR', and 'Patch Manager'. The main content area is titled 'Create Network' and contains the following fields:

- Name \* (text input)
- Subnet Mask \* (dropdown menu with value '255.255.255.252')
- Network Type (dropdown menu with value 'Backup')
- IP Address \* (text input)
- Gateway (text input)
- Default Network (radio buttons for 'Yes' and 'No', with 'No' selected)
- Interface \* (dropdown menu with values 'em3', 'em2', and 'em3', with 'em3' selected)

At the bottom right of the form are 'Cancel' and 'Create' buttons.

- b. Click **Create**.
4. If the appliance is a multi-node system, then the Web Console helps you create the network for both nodes at the same time. Click **Create Network** in the upper right corner.
    - a. Enter the network information in the required fields. The Interface field has a drop-down menu with available choices. The Subnet Mask field has a drop-down menu with available choices and a search box. Optionally, enter a Gateway IP address and select an option from the Network Type list. The network type helps to identify if the network is for backup, database, dataguard, management, private, or other.
    - b. Click **Create**.

## Updating a Network

Update a network to revise the IP address, subnet mask, gateway, or type of network.

1. Click the **Appliance** tab in the Web Console.
2. Click the **Network** tab in the left navigation to display a list of configured networks.  
When the appliance is a multi-node system, tabs named **Node0** and **Node1** appear in the right corner, below the **Refresh** button. Click a tab to display network details for each node.
3. If the appliance is a multi-node system, click **Node0** or **Node1** to display the node where the network that you want to edit resides.
4. Expand the **Actions** menu, then click **Update** for the network that you want to edit.
5. Update the information in the IP Address, Subnet Mask, and Gateway fields and select a network type from the list, as needed, then click **Update**.

### Update Network

## Deleting a Network

Delete a configured network.

1. Click the **Appliance** tab in the Web Console.
2. Click the **Network** tab in the left navigation to display a list of configured networks.  
When the appliance is a multi-node system, tabs named **Node0** and **Node1** appear in the right corner, below the **Refresh** button. Click a tab to display network details for each node.
3. If the appliance is a multi-node system, click **Node0** or **Node1** to display the node where the network that you want to delete resides.

- Expand the **Actions** menu, then click **Delete** for the network that you want to delete.



- Confirm the action when prompted.

# 10

## Backup, Restore and Recover Databases

Review backup, restore, and recovery operations for your databases.

- [About Database Backup and Recovery Options](#)  
Backup your databases in Oracle Database Appliance and use the restore and recover features to restore a database to the same or another system or to recover database files.
- [Creating a Mount Point for NFS Backup Location](#)  
Create a mount point for the Network File System (NFS) location, to set up the NFS backup and recovery option.
- [Configuring Agent Proxy Settings for Object Store Access](#)  
If the Object Store IP address is accessible only through proxy setup by the Oracle Database Appliance server, then define the proxy setting for the agent, so that the agent can access the Object Store.
- [Creating a Database Backup Policy](#)  
Understand how to create a policy to backup a database to an internal or external Oracle Fast Recovery Area (FRA) location or to the Object Store using the Web Console.
- [Updating a Database with a Backup Policy](#)  
Attach a backup policy to a database to define the database backup attributes and destination.
- [Updating a Database Backup Policy](#)  
Use the Web Console to update the recovery window, change the ObjectStore Credential, or change the crosscheck option for a database backup policy.
- [Backing Up a Database Using the Web Console](#)  
Apply a backup policy to a database, create a manual backup, update a database backup schedule, or update an archive log backup.
- [Viewing Backup Reports](#)  
Understand how you can use the Web Console to view backup reports.
- [Recovering a Database Using the Web Console](#)  
Understand the recovery options available for recovering a database.
- [Deleting a Backup Using the Web Console](#)  
Use the Web Console to delete database backups.
- [Deleting a Backup Policy](#)  
Use the Web Console to delete a database backup policy.
- [Using the CLI to Backup, Restore, and Recover](#)  
Use the command-line interface to backup, restore, and recover databases.

### About Database Backup and Recovery Options

Backup your databases in Oracle Database Appliance and use the restore and recover features to restore a database to the same or another system or to recover database files.

It is important to create a backup recovery strategy to protect the databases in Oracle Database Appliance from data loss due to a physical problem with a disk that causes a failure of a read from or write to a disk file that is required to run the database, or due to user error. The backup feature provides the ability to PITR restore the database. You can create a backup policy in the Web Console or from the command-line interface.

The following backup options are available:

- Backup to an Oracle Fast Recovery Area (FRA) disk (Internal FRA)
- Backup to Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage (Oracle Object Storage)
- Backup to a Network File System (NFS) location (External FRA)

You can use the backup, restore, and recovery features with databases that have backup policy attached to them in the system. You can choose to manage your backups, and set up your backup, restore, and recovery option.

The backup feature enables you to create a backup policy with your backup parameters, including backup level and location. For new and existing databases, you can create and attach a backup policy to a database to perform a daily backup. Once a backup policy is attached to a database, the `dcS-agent` schedules daily automatic backups for the database. It also schedules archivelog backups for the database. By default, the frequency of the archivelog backup is 30 minutes. The default schedule is a level 0 backup every Sunday and a level 1 backup Monday through Saturday. You can edit or disable the schedule.

The `dcS-agent` generates and saves a backup report for each backup. The backup report contains the metadata required to recover or restore a database.

 **Note:**

You cannot backup databases that use Transparent Data Encryption (TDE).

Recovering a database in Oracle Database Appliance is a full or whole database recovery using RMAN. You can recover from a Backup Report, a point-in-time (PITR), a System Change Number (SCN), or from the latest backup. For recovery of data block, tablespaces, data files, PDBs, see the *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery Reference Guide*.

### Backup Policy

The backup policy defines the backup details. When you create a backup policy, you define the destination for the database backups, either Internal FRA (Disk) or External FRA (NFS location), or Cloud Object Storage, and you define the recovery window.

If you use the Oracle Object Storage for backup and recovery, you must have an ObjectStore Resource ID or Name.

You can assign the backup policy to the database when you create the database. You can attach a backup policy to an existing database or update a backup policy.

### Backup Levels

The backup policy that you create defines the backup level:



- **Level 0:** The backup captures all blocks in the datafile. By default, level 0 backups occur every Sunday. You can customize your backup settings through the Web Console or the command-line. A level 0 backup is a full backup and is used as the parent for a level 1 backup.
- **Level 1:** The backup is an incremental backup that captures only those blocks that change between backups in each datafile. By default, a level 1 backup occurs daily, Monday through Saturday, and captures images of each block in a datafile that changed. Level 1 backups are differential backups. The backup includes blocks from the most recent previous level 1 or level 0 backup.
- **LongTerm:** The backup is a long-term, or archival backup. Use LongTerm to create a backup that is all-inclusive and exempt from the backup retention policy. The backup is all-inclusive because every file needed to restore and recover the database is backed up to a single location. The backup is exempt from the retention policy that is defined in the recovery window. For long term backups, you must use non-FRA locations for backup destinations using the backup policy options.
- **Archivelog:** This is a backup of all archivelogs not yet backed up to the backup destination, such as Internal FRA, External FRA (NFS location), or Object Store.

The AutoScheduler creates a level 0 backup on Level 0 Backup Day, by default, on Sunday, and level 1 on the remaining days of the week. You can display a list of scheduled backups, edit your backup schedule, or disable a scheduled backup. It also creates archivelogs backup for the database with a default frequency of 30 minutes.

### Backup to Disk

When you backup to disk, you are using the Oracle Fast Recovery Area (FRA) of the disk. FRA is a storage directory that allows backup and recovery operations on Oracle databases. The directory contains archived redo logs, backup pieces and copies, and the control file.

Advantages to backing up to disk are as follows:

- Quick recovery from backups stored on disk
- Automate management of recovery related files (like archived logs)

#### Note:

When you backup to disk, data is not encrypted and passwords are not allowed. In addition, backup to disk requires a lot of disk space (up to two to three times the size of the database).

The following is a high-level overview of the workflow for backup and recovery when using a disk:

1. Create a backup policy to define the backup location (disk) and recovery window for the disk destination.
2. Create a database and attach the backup policy to the database. When the backup policy is associated with a database, archivelog backups and database backups are automatically created.
3. Manage obsolete backups.

4. Recover the database from a backup on the disk.

### Backup to External FRA (Network File System)

Specifying a Network File System (NFS) location for backups, enables you to safely and securely store or retrieve a database backup at any time.

The advantages of using NFS backup location are:

- With NFS, you can access remote files, locally, by mounting local file systems on a network.
- Provides a centralized backup location, without requiring manual refresh.
- Supports enhanced security options using firewalls and Kerberos.
- Support for encrypted backups using passwords. You optionally, set the backup password, and provide the same during restore operation.

The following is a high-level overview of the workflow for backup and recovery when using an NFS location:

1. Create a mount point for the NFS location.

The mount point must be accessible from both nodes. The `oracle` user must have read/write permissions to the NFS location. If the request is being made to a remote server, ensure that it is running. See *Creating a Mount Point for NFS Backup Location* for the procedure to create a mount point.

2. Create a backup policy specifying the NFS location, and the recovery window for NFS destination.
3. Associate the database with this backup policy, either during database creation, or by updating the backup policy for the database.
4. Backups are automatically scheduled, and you can also run manual backups. You can specify manual backup options in the Web Console or using ODA CLI commands.
5. Manage obsolete backups.
6. Restore from backup. When you save your backups to NFS, you can restore the database to the same system or to a different system.
7. Recover the database from a backup on NFS.

### Backup to Oracle Object Storage

Oracle Object Storage is a highly secure, scalable storage platform that enables you to safely and securely store or retrieve a database backup at any time. Data and the associated metadata are stored as an object in a logical container (bucket). Oracle Database Appliance creates a Backup Report and a unique ID to identify each backup.

Oracle Object Storage is tightly integrated with Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Identity and Access Management. The data, user-defined metadata associated with the data, and encryption keys are automatically encrypted using 256-bit Advanced Encryption Standard (AES- 256). The encryption keys are rotated frequently and cannot be disabled. By default, only authenticated users that have explicitly been granted access to specific resources can access data stored in Oracle Object Storage. Data is uploaded and downloaded over SSL endpoints using the HTTPS protocol.

When you backup to Oracle Object Storage, you are using your backup policy and your Oracle ObjectStoreSwift credentials. The credentials are stored in an encrypted Oracle wallet. You can attach the credentials to one or more backup policies.

 **Note:**

Credentials are validated when you create the backup policy that uses Oracle Object Storage. The credentials are not validated against the URL and tenancy.

Advantages to using Oracle Object Storage are as follows:

- Backups are encrypted using the password for non-TDE databases.

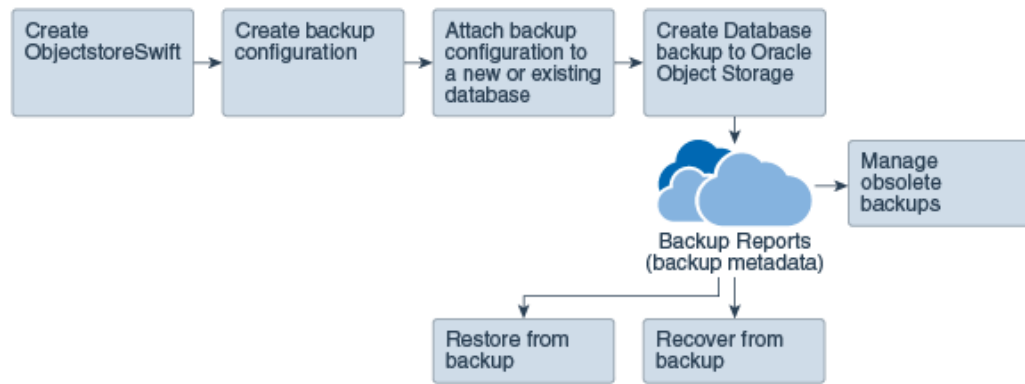
 **Note:**

Save the password that you use during backups in a safe location, you must provide the password during recovery operations.

- Quick recovery from backups. With the Oracle Object Storage, you can safely and securely use the Web Console to store or retrieve data directly from within the cloud platform, at any time.
- Automate management of recovery related files (like archived logs)
- Oracle Object Storage is not directly accessed by the operating system, instead it uses APIs to access the storage at the application level.

The following is a high-level overview of the workflow for backup and recovery when using Oracle Object Storage:

1. Create an Object Store object with your credentials.
2. Create a backup policy to define the backup location (Object Store), Object Store Credentials Name, the container (bucket) name where you want to store backups, and the recovery window.
3. Create a database and attach the backup policy either as a part of creating the database, or update the database with backup policy after creating the database. When the backup policy is associated with a database, backups are automatically created.
4. Manage obsolete backups.
5. Restore from backup. When you save your backups to Oracle Object Storage, you can restore the database to the same system or to a different system.
6. Recover the database from a backup on Oracle Object Storage.



**Note:**

Before you can use this backup option, you must create an Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage account. When you create the account, you define the account credentials, end point URL, and bucket. Go to the [Oracle Store](#) and sign up for Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage.

### Backup Reports

A backup report is generated for each backup and is similar to, but does not replace, a recovery catalog. The report contains the Oracle Database Appliance information and metadata needed to restore or recover a database. The Backup Report is designed to keep track of all of the information required to restore or recover a database.

The following is an example of a level 1 backup report:

```

{
  "id" : "2d82460c-d648-4e75-8c7d-72cc90bc442a",
  "dbResId" : "b5fc646e-01a6-4c8b-8286-7633346c4329",
  "tag" : null,
  "dbId" : "2717054291",
  "dbName" : "HRDbO",
  "dbUniqueName" : "HRDbOu",
  "backupType" : "REGULAR-L1",
  "keepDays" : null,
  "backupLocation" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.us-phoenix-1.oraclecloud.com/v1/dbaasimage/backupbucket",
  "cfBackupHandle" : "c-2717054291-20171108-04",
  "spfBackupHandle" : "c-2717054291-20171108-04",
  "pitrTimeStamp" : "November 08, 2017 12:43:14 PM UTC",
  "pitrSCN" : "1175058",
  "resetLogsTimeStamp" : "November 08, 2017 09:55:34 AM UTC",
  "resetLogsSCN" : "1112268",
  "oraHomeVersion" : "12.2.0.1.170814 (26723265, 26609817)",
  "sqlPatches" : "25811364,26609817",
  "backupLogLoc" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.us-phoenix-1.oraclecloud.com/v1/dbaasimage/backupbucket/scaoda702c1n1/rmanlog/HRDbOu/2717054291/2017-11-08/rman_backup_2017-11-08_12-42-41.0545.log",
  "tdeWalletLoc" : null,
  "dbConfigLoc" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.us-phoenix-1.oraclecloud.com/v1/dbaasimage/backupbucket/scaoda702c1n1/dbconfig/HRDbOu/2717054291/2017-11-08/DBCONFIG_TAG20171108T124407_2017-11-08_12-44-07.0533.tar.gz",
  "name" : "Backup_Report_HRDbO",
  "createTime" : "November 08, 2017 12:42:08 PM UTC",
  "state" : {
    "status" : "CONFIGURED"
  },
  "updatedAt" : "November 08, 2017 12:44:12 PM UTC",
  "backupReportLogDetail" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.us-phoenix-1.oraclecloud.com/v1/dbaasimage/backupbucket/scaoda702c1n1/rmandetaillogreport/HRDbOu/2717054291/2017-11-08/rman_list_backup_detail_2017-11-08_12-44-04.0362.log",
  "dbInfo" : {
    "dbClass" : "OLTP",
    "dbType" : "RAC",
    "dbShape" : "odbl",
    "dbEdition" : "EE",
    "dbStorage" : "ASM"
  },
  "dbDataSize" : "1542M",
}

```

```
"dbRedoSize" : "16403M"  
}
```

## About Recovery Options

The recovery in Oracle Database Appliance always performs a full database restore or recover. The recovery options are LATEST, PITR, SCN, and BackupReport.

The following types of recovery are available:

- **LATEST:** Performs a complete recovery (valid backups and all required archived logs and online redo logs must be available)
- **PITR:** Point-in-Time Recovery that performs a recovery to a specified timestamp within the current incarnation of database
- **SCN:** SCN-based recovery that performs a recovery is an incomplete recovery to a specified SCN within the current incarnation of database.
- **BackupReport:** Performs a recovery based on the Backup Report SCN. The BackupReport option is similar to SCN, except that the recovery uses the Backup Report SCN instead of a specified SCN.

## Point-in-Time Database Recovery

Point-in-Time Recovery (PITR) recovers the database to a specific point-in-time. You must use specify the timestamp for this type of recovery.

A point-in-time recovery is often used for the following situations:

- You want to recover the database to an SCN before a user or administrative error.
- Complete database recovery failed because all necessary archived redo logs were not available.
- A database upgrade fails.
- You are creating a test database or a reporting database from production database backups.

## System Change Number Recovery

A system change number (SCN) is a stamp that defines a committed version of a database at a point in time. Oracle assigns every committed transaction a unique SCN. You can recover a database to the latest time or to an SCN.

The database is restored from backups created before the target time, and then applies incremental backups and logs to re-create all changes between the time of the data file backups and the end point of recovery. When the end point is specified as an SCN, the database applies the redo logs and stops after each redo thread or the specified SCN, whichever occurs first. When the end point is specified as a time, the database internally determines a suitable SCN for the specified time and then recovers to this SCN.

SCN is a primary mechanism to maintain data consistency in Oracle database. With each execution, there is an increase in the count of the SCN. The following are some examples of areas that use SCN:

1. **Redo records.** Every redo record has an SCN version of the redo record in the redo header (redo records can have non-unique SCN). Given redo records from two threads (as in the case of RAC), recovery will order them in SCN order, essentially maintaining a strict sequential order.

2. Data block. Every data block has block SCN (block version). In addition to that, a change vector in a redo record also has expected block SCN. This means that a change vector can be applied to one and only version of the block. Code checks if the target SCN in a change vector is matching with the block SCN before applying the redo record. If there is a mismatch, corruption errors are thrown.
3. Read consistency. Every query has query environment which includes an SCN at the start of the query. A session can see the transactional changes only if that transaction commit SCN is lower than the query environment SCN.
4. Commit. Every commit generates an SCN (commit SCN) that marks a transaction boundary. Group commits are possible too.

### Obsolete Database Backups

It is important to remove older backups once they become obsolete. The type of backup and the recovery window that you define in the database backup policy determines when database backups become obsolete.

For level 0 and level 1 backups, run the command `odacli delete-backup` for a given Database Resource Identifier to delete obsolete backups based on the defined recovery window.

For Longterm backups, provide the corresponding backup report as an input and use the command `odacli delete-backup` to delete the backups from Oracle Object Storage.

Typically, older level 0 and level 1 database backups are considered obsolete and deleted based on the defined recovery window, as follows:

- Disk: 1-14 days
- Object Storage: 1-31 days

### Related Topics

- [Creating a Mount Point for NFS Backup Location](#)  
Create a mount point for the Network File System (NFS) location, to set up the NFS backup and recovery option.

## Creating a Mount Point for NFS Backup Location

Create a mount point for the Network File System (NFS) location, to set up the NFS backup and recovery option.

Follow these steps to create a mount point for the NFS location:

1. Follow these steps on the source machine:
  - a. Create a sharable location on the source machine and give full permissions to this directory.

```
# mkdir /tmp/nfs_test
chmod 777 /tmp/nfs_test
```

- b. Add entries in the `/etc/exports` file in the format `shared_location destination_IPs (permissions)`.

For example:

```
# cat /etc/exports
/tmp/nfs_test 192.0.2.1(rw, sync)
/tmp/nfs_test 192.0.2.2(rw, sync)
```

- c. Restart the NFS server on the host.

```
service nfs restart
```

- d. Check the export list for the entries.

```
# showmount -e
Export list for oda1:
/tmp/nfs_test 192.0.2.1,192.0.2.2
```

2. Follow these steps on the client machine:

- a. Create a client location on the client machine as the `oracle` user.

```
# sudo -E -u oracle mkdir /tmp/client_location
```

- b. Mount this location with the source location in the format `mount_server:source_folder client_location`.

```
# mount 192.0.2.3:/tmp/nfs_test /tmp/client_location
```

- c. Check if the mount details are correct:

```
# mount
192.0.2.3:/tmp/nfs_test on /tmp/client_location type nfs
(rw, vers=4, addr=192.0.2.3, clientaddr=192.0.2.2)
```

Specify this NFS location in the backup configuration, either through the Web Console or CLI commands.

### Related Topics

- [About Database Backup and Recovery Options](#)  
Backup your databases in Oracle Database Appliance and use the restore and recover features to restore a database to the same or another system or to recover database files.

### Related Topics

- [Preparing for Database Backup to NFS Location](#)  
Use the command-line interface to create a policy to backup a database to an External FRA (NFS Location).

## Configuring Agent Proxy Settings for Object Store Access

If the Object Store IP address is accessible only through proxy setup by the Oracle Database Appliance server, then define the proxy setting for the agent, so that the agent can access the Object Store.

To create a backup policy that uses Object Store location, the agent must be able to access the Object Store URL.

1. Define the `HttpProxyHost` and `HttpProxyPort` settings in the `update-agentconfigParameters` command.

```
# odacli update-agentConfigParameters -n HttpProxyHost -v www-
proxy.test.com -n HttpProxyPort -v 80 -u
```

Job details

```
-----
ID: 0b0cbf9b-b0ab-4523-a096-5da4e48fc825
Description: Update agent configuration parameter values
[HttpProxyHost, HttpProxyPort]
Status: Created
Created: October 23, 2018 4:56:53 PM IST
Message:
```

```
Task Name Start Time End Time Status
-----
```

For more information about the `agentconfigParameters` command usage, see the Oracle Database Appliance Command-Line Interface.

2. Verify that the update succeeded:

```
# odacli describe-job -i 0b0cbf9b-b0ab-4523-a096-5da4e48fc825
```

Job details

```
-----
ID: 0b0cbf9b-b0ab-4523-a096-5da4e48fc825
Description: Update agent configuration parameter values
[HttpProxyHost, HttpProxyPort]
Status: Success
Created: October 23, 2018 4:56:53 PM IST
Message:
```

```
Task Name Start Time End Time Status
```

3. Run the `list-agentconfigParameters` command to view the changes in the proxy settings:

```
# odacli list-agentConfigParameters
```

```
Name Value Description Updated
-----
HttpProxyHost www-proxy.test.com October 23, 2018 4:56:53 PM IST
```



```
HttpProxyPort 80 October 23, 2018 4:56:53 PM IST
HttpsProxyHost https proxy server host October 23, 2018 12:23:21 AM IST
HttpsProxyPort https proxy server port October 23, 2018 12:23:21 AM IST
OSPatchRepos Repo list for OS patching October 23, 2018 12:23:21 AM IST
```

You can now use the Web Console or the command-line interface to create a backup policy to use the ObjectStore location for backup.

### Related Topics

- [odacli update-agentconfig-parameters](#)  
Use the `odacli update-agentconfig-parameters` command to modify configuration variables used by the appliance.
- [odacli list-agentconfig-parameters](#)  
Use the `odacli list-agentconfig-parameters` command to list configuration variables used by the appliance.

## Creating a Database Backup Policy

Understand how to create a policy to backup a database to an internal or external Oracle Fast Recovery Area (FRA) location or to the Object Store using the Web Console.

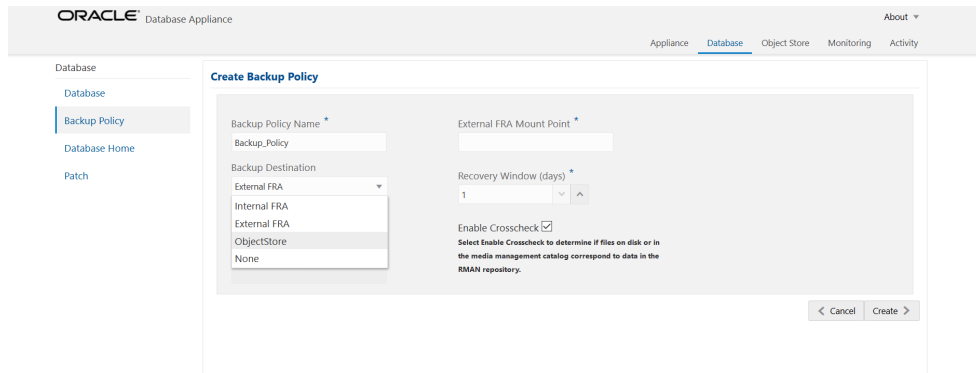
The backup policy defines the backup, including the location where you want to store the backups and the recovery window. Backup to disk requires a lot of disk space (up to two to three times the size of the database).

Follow these steps to create a backup policy from the Web Console:

1. Click the **Database** tab in the Web Console.
2. Click **Backup Policy** in the left navigation to display a list of backup policies.
3. Click **Create Backup Policy**.
4. Enter a name for the backup policy and select the number of days for the recovery window. Select **Enable Crosscheck** to determine if the files on the disk on in the media management catalog correspond to data in the RMAN repository. Select one of the following as the backup destination:
  - To backup to disk, select **Internal FRA** as the backup destination.
  - To backup to the cloud, select **ObjectStore** as the backup destination. If you have more than one Object Store, then select the Object Store Credential Name from the list. Enter a name in the Container Name field.
  - To backup to an NFS location, select **External FRA** as the backup destination, and specify the NFS mount point location.
  - To not define a destination, select **None**.

The Backup Policy name must begin with an alpha character and contain only alphanumeric characters.

The following figure shows the Create Backup Policy page.



5. Click **Create**. Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to create the backup policy.  
A link to the job appears. When the job completes successfully, the backup configuration is ready.

Update an existing database to attach the backup configuration to the database using the ID or Name. When you attach the backup configuration to a database, the `dcS-agent` schedules daily automatic backups for the database.

## Updating a Database with a Backup Policy

Attach a backup policy to a database to define the database backup attributes and destination.

1. In the Web Console, click the **Database** tab, then select a database from the list.
2. In the Database Information page, click **Apply Backup Policy**.  
If the action is disabled, then you must create a backup policy.
3. Select a backup policy from the list of available backup policies, and provide the **Backup Encryption Password**. Click **Apply**.
4. Expand the **Actions** menu, then click **View** to display the Database Information page.

The details include whether or not Auto Backup is enabled, the Backup Destination, and options to create a backup, enable or disable automatic backups, update the database, and archive log backup schedule.

5. (Optional) Click **Manual Backup** to create a single backup. Click **Update Database Backup Schedule** to schedule automatic backups. Click **Update Archive Log Backup Schedule** to schedule archive log backups.
6. Click the **Activity** tab to check the job status.

When the job completes successfully, the backup policy is associated with the database.

## Updating a Database Backup Policy

Use the Web Console to update the recovery window, change the ObjectStore Credential, or change the crosscheck option for a database backup policy.

Crosscheck determines if the files on the disk on in the media management catalog correspond to data in the RMAN repository.

1. Click the **Database** tab in the Web Console.
2. Click **Backup Policy** in the left navigation to display a list of backup policies.
3. Expand the **Actions** menu for a backup policy, then click **Update**.
4. To change the recovery window, use the up or down arrow to change the number of days.
5. To enable or disable the crosscheck, select or deselect **Enable Crosscheck**.
6. Click **Update**. Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to update the backup policy.  
A link to the job appears. When the job completes successfully, the backup configuration is ready.

## Backing Up a Database Using the Web Console

Apply a backup policy to a database, create a manual backup, update a database backup schedule, or update an archive log backup.

You can use the Web Console or the command-line interface to create a database backup. In the command-line interface, use the command `odacli create-backup` for a specified Database.

Before creating a database backup, you must have a backup policy. The backup policy defines the recovery window and the backup destination. You must associate a backup policy with the database, otherwise you cannot create backups. Follow these steps to backup a database from the Web Console:

1. In the Web Console, click the **Database** tab.
2. Click a database name to select a database from the list.
3. Review the database information, including the backup policy name and destination details. To select a backup policy for the database, click **Apply Backup Policy**. Select a policy and specify the **Backup Encryption Password**.
4. Click **Manual Backup**, **Update Database Backup Schedule** or **Update Archive Log Backup Schedule**.

If the action is disabled, then apply a backup policy.

5. Click **Yes** to confirm the job.

A link to the job appears. When the job completes successfully, the backup is ready. A list of backups appears at the bottom of the page.

## Viewing Backup Reports

Understand how you can use the Web Console to view backup reports.

A report is generated when a database backup is performed. The backup report lists the type, location, and date and timestamp of the backup.

1. In the Web Console, click the **Database** tab, then click the database name in the list of databases.

Information about the database appears on the Database Information page.

2. Scroll to the bottom of the page to view a list of Backups.

3. Click the Job ID for a backup to view the Backup Report and more details about the backup.

## Recovering a Database Using the Web Console

Understand the recovery options available for recovering a database.

1. In the Web Console, click the **Database** tab, then select a database from the list.
2. On the Database Information page, click **Recover**.
3. On the Recover Database page, select any of the following recovery options:
  - Recover Full Database to the specified Backup:** Select the existing backup from which you want to recover the database
  - Recover Full Database to the Latest:** Select this option to recover the database from the last known good state, with the least possible data loss.
  - Recover Full Database to the specified Timestamp:** Specify the timestamp to recover the database.
  - Recover Full Database to the System Change Number (SCN):** Specify the SCN of the backup from which you want to recover the database.
4. Specify and confirm the **Backup Encryption Password**.
5. Click the **Activity** tab to check the job status.

When the job completes successfully, the database is recovered as per the specified recovery options.

## Deleting a Backup Using the Web Console

Use the Web Console to delete database backups.

You can delete Level-0, Level-1, and Archive Log backups anytime. To delete long term backups, you must check the Backup Report for the database to determine when the backup is obsolete.

1. Click the **Database** tab in the Web Console.
2. Click the database name, in blue font, to display more details about the database for which you want to delete the backup.
3. Click **Delete Backups** .
4. Select the Backup type you want to delete, whether Level-0, Level-1, and Archive Log backup or long Term backup, then click **Start**. Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to delete the backup.

A link to the job appears. When the job completes successfully, the backup is deleted.

## Deleting a Backup Policy

Use the Web Console to delete a database backup policy.

1. Click the **Database** tab in the Web Console.
2. Click **Backup Policy** in the left navigation to display a list of backup policies.

3. Expand the **Actions** menu for a backup policy, then click **Delete**. Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to delete the backup policy.

A link to the job appears. When the job completes successfully, the backup policy is deleted.

## Using the CLI to Backup, Restore, and Recover

Use the command-line interface to backup, restore, and recover databases.

- [Preparing for Database Backup to Disk](#)  
Use the command-line interface to create a policy to backup a database to the Oracle Fast Recovery Area (FRA) of a disk.
- [Preparing for Database Backup to NFS Location](#)  
Use the command-line interface to create a policy to backup a database to an External FRA (NFS Location).
- [Preparing for Database Backup to Oracle Cloud](#)  
Create a backup configuration to backup a database to Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage.
- [Backing Up a Database with the CLI](#)  
Create a level 0, level 1, LongTerm database backup, or archivelog backup with the command-line interface.
- [Recovering a Database with the CLI](#)  
Recover the database to the system using a Backup Report, point-in-time recovery (PITR), a system change number (SCN), or from the latest backup time.
- [Restoring a Database with the CLI](#)  
Restore a database to a system from Oracle Object Storage using a Backup Report and the command-line interface.
- [Deleting Backups with the CLI](#)  
Delete older, obsolete level 0, level 1 and long term backups.

## Preparing for Database Backup to Disk

Use the command-line interface to create a policy to backup a database to the Oracle Fast Recovery Area (FRA) of a disk.

You can create a backup policy using the Web Console or the command-line interface. Most of the backup and recovery commands enable you to provide either a resource name or resource ID to identify the database.

Backup to disk or the **Backup to Internal FRA** option in the Web Console, requires a lot of disk space (up to two to three times the size of the database).

Follow these steps to create a backup policy through the command-line interface:

1. Create a BackupConfig object (backup configuration) using the command `odaccli create-backupconfig`.

The backup configuration defines the backup, including the location where you want to store the backups and the recovery window.

The following example creates a backup configuration named `mkgldailydisk` with a backup to `disk` and a 1 day recovery window.

```
# odacli create-backupconfig -d Disk -n mkgldailydisk -w 1
```

2. Check the job status.

```
# odacli list-jobs
```

When the job completes successfully, the backup configuration is ready.

3. Update an existing database to attach the backup configuration to the database using the ID or Name.

When you attach the backup configuration to a database, the `dcs-agent` schedules daily automatic backups for the database.

The following example uses the Database Resource ID and Backup Configuration ID:

```
# odacli update-database -i d3c4d8f6-5eb7-4f9e-ab27-7bdd5013ac90 -bi 9d942e0a-ba00-4cbc-9bfb-0de83ed279e5 -bp
```

The following example uses the Database Resource Name, `mydb` and the Backup Configuration Name, `mydb`:

```
# odacli update-database -in mydb -bin mybcfg -bp
```

You can create manual backups or scheduled backups to disk.

## Preparing for Database Backup to NFS Location

Use the command-line interface to create a policy to backup a database to an External FRA (NFS Location).

You can create a backup policy using the Web Console or the command-line interface. Most of the backup and recovery commands enable you to provide either a resource name or resource ID to identify the database.

Backup to NFS location or the **Backup to External FRA** option in the Web Console, requires creation of an NFS mount point.

Follow these steps to create a backup policy through the command-line interface:

1. Create a BackupConfig object (backup configuration) using the command `odacli create-backupconfig`.

The backup configuration defines the backup, including the location where you want to store the backups and the recovery window.

The following example creates a backup configuration named `mkgldailydisk` with a backup to `disk` and a 1 day recovery window.

```
# odacli create-backupconfig -d NFS -n mkgldailynfs -c absolute-path-to-parent-directory-for-NFS-destination -w 1
```

**2.** Check the job status.

```
# odacli list-jobs
```

When the job completes successfully, the backup configuration is ready.

**3.** (Optional) Update an existing database to attach the backup configuration to the database using the ID or Name.

When you attach the backup configuration to a database, the `dcs-agent` schedules daily automatic backups for the database.

The following example uses the Database Resource ID and Backup Configuration ID:

```
# odacli update-database -i d3c4d8f6-5eb7-4f9e-ab27-7bdd5013ac90 -bi 9d942e0a-ba00-4cbc-9bfb-0de83ed279e5 -bp
```

The following example uses the Database Resource Name, `mydb` and the Backup Configuration Name, `mydb`:

```
# odacli update-database -in mydb -bin mybcfg -bp
```

You can create manual backups or scheduled backups to NFS location.

**Related Topics**

- [Creating a Mount Point for NFS Backup Location](#)  
Create a mount point for the Network File System (NFS) location, to set up the NFS backup and recovery option.

## Preparing for Database Backup to Oracle Cloud

Create a backup configuration to backup a database to Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage.

Before you can backup to Oracle Object Storage, you must sign up for an Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage account and know your Oracle Object Storage credentials. When you create an Oracle ObjectStoreSwift object, the command creates and stores the credential details in the system and stores the password in an encrypted Oracle wallet. The Oracle wallet contains your tenant name, user name, and defines the end point URL.

Go to the Oracle Store to sign up for Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage.

- 1.** Create an Oracle ObjectStoreSwift object using the command `create-objectstoreswift`. If you already have an Oracle wallet for Oracle Database Appliance, skip to Step 2.

```
# odacli create-objectstoreswift -e swift end point URL -n Object Store Swift name [-p] swiftpassword -t Object Store tenant name -u Object Store user name
```

For example:

```
# odacli create-objectstoreswift -e https://
swiftobjectstorage.rl.oracleiaas.com/v1 -n ossn1 -t mytenant -u
user.name@example.com -p
```

The output includes an objectstoreswift Resource ID to identify an ObjectStoreSwift credential.

2. Create a BackupConfig object (backup configuration) using the command `odacli create-backupconfig`.

The backup configuration defines the backup, including the location (container) where you want to store the backups, the recovery window, and the credentials that are defined in your encrypted Oracle wallet.

The following example creates a backup configuration named `hr_7d_cloud` with a backup to the ObjectStore. The following backup parameters are defined: the container is `hr_bucket`, crosscheck is not enabled, the recovery window is 7 days, and the ObjectStoreSwift Resource ID is provided, which attaches the Oracle Wallet and credentials to the backup configuration.

```
# odacli create-backupconfig -n hr_7d_cloud -d ObjectStore -w 7 -o
b974f006-5503-4949-ab6c-6f1a56e4ac37 -c hr_bucket -no-cr
```

 **Note:**

If the ObjectstoreSwift Object was not created with valid credentials, then creating the backup configuration will fail.

3. Check the job status.

```
# odacli list-jobs
```

When the job completes successfully, the backup configuration is ready. When you create a new database, you have the option to associate the database with a backup configuration.

4. (Optional) Update an existing database to attach the backup configuration to the database.

When you attach the backup configuration to a database, the `dcs-agent` schedules daily automatic backups for the database.

```
# odacli update-database -i e3c4d8f6-5eb7-4f9e-ab27-7bdd5013ac10 -bi
7d942e0a-ba00-4cbc-9bfb-0de83ed279e5 -bp
```

You can create manual backups outside of scheduled backups, view backup reports, or disable automatic backups.



## Backing Up a Database with the CLI

Create a level 0, level 1, LongTerm database backup, or archivelog backup with the command-line interface.

You can create a database backup in the Web Console or with the command-line interface. When you attach a backup configuration object to a database, the `dcs-agent` automatically schedules daily backups for the database. The day and time are based on the Oracle Database Appliance time zone. The AutoSchedule triggers a level 0 Backup every Sunday, a level 1 the other 6 days of the week, and an archivelog backup every 30 minutes. Use the command `odacli update-schedule` to disable or change the scheduled backup time.

To create a Long Term database backup, or a level 0 or level 1 backup outside of the automatic backups, use the command `odacli create-backup`.

### Note:

To recover a database, there must be a level 0 backup taken, so that the backup report contains information about the base backup. Restoring a database to the same system with a different DB Name and DB Unique Name or to another system does not always require a long term database backup report. You can use archivelog, or level 0, or level 1 backup reports as well. If you use the archivelog backup report, a prior database backup must exist. To restore a database to another system, you must have a long term database backup in Oracle Object Storage.

1. Verify that a backup configuration object is associated with the database.
2. Create a single backup, outside of the automatic backups, by using the command `odacli create-backup`.

Use the Database Resource ID to identify the database to backup, specify the type of backup, and use a tag to create a name for the backup. You can use up to 30 alphanumeric characters for the backup name tag. If you do not select a backup type (level 0, level 1, LongTerm, or archivelog backup), a level 1 backup is performed. For example, create a level 0 backup named `2018Jan02_HRLevel0` for resource ID `20576eb1-bc32-4e34-bf97-fda0b60ca15b`

```
# odacli create-backup -i 20576eb1-bc32-4e34-bf97-fda0b60ca15b -bt  
Regular-L0 -t 2018Jan02_HRLevel0
```

When the job finishes, a backup report is generated for the backup. The report contains all of the metadata required to recover a database.

3. (Optional) Display a list of backup reports.

```
# odacli list-backupreports
```

4. (Optional) Display a list of all scheduled backups.

```
# odacli list-schedules
```

## Recovering a Database with the CLI

Recover the database to the system using a Backup Report, point-in-time recovery (PITR), a system change number (SCN), or from the latest backup time.

Recovering a database in Oracle Database Appliance is a full RMAN database recovery.

Recovering from a backup report requires JSON input for the backup report.

1. Display a list of backup reports and locate the latest Backup Report for the database and save the Backup Report ID.

```
# odacli list-backupreports
```

2. Use the Backup Report ID to display the details of the Backup Report. Determine how you want to recover the database: PITR, SCN, or Latest and locate the needed information in the Backup Report.

```
# odacli describe-backupreport -i 2d82460c-d648-4e75-8c7d-72cc90bc442a
{
  "id" : "2d82460c-d648-4e75-8c7d-72cc90bc442a",
  "dbResId" : "b5fc646e-01a6-4c8b-8286-7633346c4329",
  "tag" : null,
  "dbId" : "2717054291",
  "dbName" : "ExampleDB",
  "dbUniqueName" : "ExampleDBu",
  "backupType" : "REGULAR-L1",
  "keepDays" : null,
  "backupLocation" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/
dbaasimage/backupbucket",
  "cfBackupHandle" : "c-2717054291-20180108-04",
  "spfBackupHandle" : "c-2717054291-20180108-04",
  "pitrTimeStamp" : "January 08, 2018 12:43:14 PM UTC",
  "pitrSCN" : "1175058",
  "resetLogsTimeStamp" : "January 08, 2018 09:55:34 AM UTC",
  "resetLogsSCN" : "1112268",
  "oraHomeVersion" : "12.2.0.1.170814 (26723265, 26609817)",
  "sqlPatches" : "25811364,26609817",
  "backupLogLoc" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/
dbaasimage/backupbucket/system_namecln1/
rmanlog/ExampleDBu/2717054291/2018-01-08/
rman_backup_2018-01-08_12-42-41.0545.log",
  "tdeWalletLoc" : null,
  "dbConfigLoc" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/dbaasimage/
backupbucket/system_namecln1/
dbconfig/ExampleDBu/2717054291/2018-01-08/
DBCONFIG_TAG20180108T124407_2018-01-08_12-44-07.0533.tar.gz",
  "name" : "Backup_Report_ExampleDB",
  "createTime" : "January 08, 2018 12:42:08 PM UTC",
  "state" : {
    "status" : "CONFIGURED"
  },
  "updatedAtTime" : "January 08, 2018 12:44:12 PM UTC",
```

```

    "backupReportLogDetail" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/
dbaasimage/backupbucket/system_namecln1/
rmandetaillogreport/ExampleDBu/2717054291/2018-01-08/
rman_list_backup_detail_2018-01-08_12-44-04.0362.log",
    "dbInfo" : {
        "dbClass" : "OLTP",
        "dbType" : "RAC",
        "dbShape" : "odbl",
        "dbEdition" : "EE",
        "dbStorage" : "ASM"
    },
    "dbDataSize" : "1542M",
    "dbRedoSize" : "16403M"
}

```

3. To recover from a backup report, based on PITR, identify the database ID and the backup report for recovery.

In the following example, the JSON input file for the backup report is `backupreport.json`.

```
# odacli recover-database -i b5fc646e-01a6-4c8b-8286-7633346c4 -br
backupreport.json -p
```

4. To recover based on PITR, identify the database ID and the date and time stamp for recovery.

```
# odacli recover-database -i b5fc646e-01a6-4c8b-8286-7633346c4 -t PITR -
r 01/08/2018 12:57:33 -p
```

5. To recover based on SCN, identify the database ID and the SCN number.

```
# odacli recover-database -i b5fc646e-01a6-4c8b-8286-7633346c4 -t SCN -
s 392375947
```

6. To recover based on the latest backup, identify the database ID and use the Latest option.

```
# odacli recover-database -i b5fc646e-01a6-4c8b-8286-7633346c4 -t
Latest -p
```

7. Validate that the job completed. You can track the job in the **Activity** tab in the Web Console, or run the command `odacli describe-job` with the job ID.

```
# odacli describe-job -i jobId
```

When the job completes successfully, the recovery is complete.

## Restoring a Database with the CLI

Restore a database to a system from Oracle Object Storage using a Backup Report and the command-line interface.

When you restore a database, environment and validation checks and setup tasks are performed. Restoring a database requires a number of tasks and configuration details, such as creating database storage, Oracle Home, recreating the control file, registering the database, and establishing RMAN restore and recovery. An Oracle Database Appliance backup report is generated for each backup and contains the metadata required to restore a database. The report is designed to help you to quickly and efficiently restore a database.

You can restore a database from one appliance to another appliance, or to the same appliance when the source database is deleted:

- To restore to a different system, copy the backup report generated by the command `odacli create-backup` to the other machine's `\bin` folder and use the command `odacli irestore-database` with the backup report.
- To restore to the same system, delete the source database and use the backup report generated by the command `odacli create-backup`.

To restore a database to another system, you must have a database backup report in Oracle Object Storage, valid credentials in an Oracle wallet (ObjectStoreSwift), the Swift Object Store credential ID, and the SYS user password.

Follow these steps to restore a database using the command-line (CLI):

1. Display a list of backup reports and locate the latest Backup Report in Oracle Object Storage for the database and save the Backup Report ID.

```
# odacli list-backupreports
```

2. Use the Backup Report ID to display the details of the Backup Report.

```
# odacli describe-backupreport -i 2d82460c-d648-4e75-8c7d-72cc90bc442a
{
  "id" : "2d82460c-d648-4e75-8c7d-72cc90bc442a",
  "dbResId" : "b5fc646e-01a6-4c8b-8286-7633346c4329",
  "tag" : null,
  "dbId" : "2717054291",
  "dbName" : "ExampleDB",
  "dbUniqueName" : "ExampleDBu",
  "backupType" : "REGULAR-L1",
  "keepDays" : null,
  "backupLocation" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/dbaasimage/backupbucket",
  "cfBackupHandle" : "c-2717054291-20180108-04",
  "spfBackupHandle" : "c-2717054291-20180108-04",
  "pitrTimeStamp" : "January 08, 2018 12:43:14 PM UTC",
  "pitrSCN" : "1175058",
  "resetLogsTimeStamp" : "January 08, 2018 09:55:34 AM UTC",
  "resetLogsSCN" : "1112268",
  "oraHomeVersion" : "12.2.0.1.170814 (26723265, 26609817)",
  "sqlPatches" : "25811364,26609817",
  "backupLogLoc" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/dbaasimage/backupbucket/system_namec1n1/rmanlog/ExampleDBu/2717054291/2018-01-08/rman_backup_2018-01-08_12-42-41.0545.log",
  "tdeWalletLoc" : null,
  "dbConfigLoc" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/dbaasimage/backupbucket/system_namec1n1/dbconfig/ExampleDBu/2717054291/2018-01-08/DBCONFIG_TAG20180108T124407_2018-01-08_12-44-07.0533.tar.gz",
  "name" : "Backup_Report_ExampleDB",
  "createTime" : "January 08, 2018 12:42:08 PM UTC",
  "state" : {
    "status" : "CONFIGURED"
  }
},
```

```

"updatedAt" : "January 08, 2018 12:44:12 PM UTC",
"backupReportLogDetail" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/dbaasimage/backupbucket/
system_namecn1/
rmandetaillogreport/ExampleDBu/2717054291/2018-01-08/
rman_list_backup_detail_2018-01-08_12-44-04.0362.log",
"dbInfo" : {
  "dbClass" : "OLTP",
  "dbType" : "RAC",
  "dbShape" : "odbl",
  "dbEdition" : "EE",
  "dbStorage" : "ASM"
},
"dbDataSize" : "1542M",
"dbRedoSize" : "16403M"
}

```

3. (Optional) If you need to generate a new backup report, use the command `odacli create-backup`.

```
# odacli create-backup
```

4. Locate the Swift Object Store credential ID for the database backup.

```
# odacli list-objectstoreswifts
```

5. Save the backup report as a JSON file in a folder in the `\bin` directory on the appliance. For example, `backupreport.json`.
6. Restore the database to the system using the JSON file in the command `odacli irestore-database`.

Run the command, then enter the SYS user password when prompted.

```
# odacli irestore-database -r backupreport.json -oid Object Store ID -m
```

7. Validate that the job completed. You can track the job in the **Activity** tab in the Web Console, or run the command `odacli describe-job` with the job ID.

```
# odacli describe-job -i jobId
```

## Deleting Backups with the CLI

Delete older, obsolete level 0, level 1 and long term backups.

For level 0 and level 1 backups, the recovery window defined in the Backup Configuration determines when the backup is obsolete. The ranges are as follows:

- Backup to disk: between 1 and 14 days
- Backup to the Oracle Object Storage: between 1 and 31 days

For Long Term backups to the Oracle Object Storage, view the Backup Report for a database to determine when the backup is obsolete. To delete Long Term Backup, the Database Resource ID or Database name and the Backup Report are required.

Follow these steps to delete database backups using `odacli` commands:

1. Display a list of all backup reports.

```
# odacli list-backupreports
```

2. Obtain the Database ID and type of backup.

```
# odacli describe-backupreport -i Backup Report ID
```

3. To delete obsolete level 0 and level 1 backups, use the Database ID or Database Name to delete the backup.

```
# odacli delete-backup -i 20576eb1-bc32-4e34-bf97-fda0b60ca15b
```

4. To delete Long Term backups, use the Backup Report and a JSON file to delete the backup.

In the following example, the JSON input file for the backup report is `backupreport.json`.

```
# odacli delete-backup -i 20576eb1-bc32-4e34-bf97-fda0b60ca15b -br backupreport.json
```

# 11

## Managing Oracle Database Appliance KVM Virtualization

Review the concepts and procedures for Oracle Database Appliance Virtualized Platform.

- [About KVM Virtualization](#)  
KVM virtualization uses a kernel-based virtual machine (KVM) to create a virtualized environment for your Linux applications.

### About KVM Virtualization

KVM virtualization uses a kernel-based virtual machine (KVM) to create a virtualized environment for your Linux applications.

Beginning with Oracle Database Appliance 12.1.2.11.0, the required RPMs are included in the Oracle Database Appliance patch bundle. When you upgrade to Oracle Database Appliance 12.1.2.12.0 or later, the Oracle Linux KVM hypervisor is installed as part of the Oracle Linux kernel and uses CPU extensions (HVM) for virtualization. The Linux KVM is a Type II hypervisor, which means that it is one layer above the operating system. When you run your Linux applications in a virtualized environment, you can isolate your database from your applications. One of the advantages to isolating the applications is that you can update your Oracle Database without impacting the applications, which enables you to deploy both the database and application on the same system to create a Solution-in-a-Box.

The following are limitations with using KVM:

- All virtual machines (VM), or guests, are Oracle Linux operating systems and only Linux applications are supported in the KVM.
- You cannot deploy an Oracle Database in the KVM. Oracle Databases must run on the base Oracle Linux operating system.
- KVM on Oracle Linux does not support hard partitioning. This means that all enabled cores/sockets on Oracle Database Appliance are licensed for databases and applications running on the appliance using the appropriate licensing metric for the database edition and application. Using KVM does not limit licensing, capacity on demand for Oracle Database Appliance still applies.

#### See Also:

For more about Oracle Linux KVM on Oracle Database Appliance, see the KVM series in the Oracle Database Appliance blog at <https://blogs.oracle.com/oda/kvm>.

# 12

## Oracle Database Appliance Command-Line Interface

The command-line interface has different classes of tools to manage Oracle Database Appliance.

- [About Oracle Database Appliance Command-Line Interface](#)  
Three classes of tools are available to perform deployment, lifecycle management, and system administration on Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Managing ODACLI Privileges and Security with SUDO](#)  
Oracle Appliance Manager command-line utility requires `root` system privileges for most administration actions. You may want to use SUDO as part of your system auditing and security policy.
- [odacli Network Commands](#)  
Use the `odacli network` commands to list and describe network interfaces.
- [odacli Apply Patch and Update Commands](#)  
Use the commands `odacli update` and `apply patch` to apply patches and update the appliance.
- [odacli Appliance Commands](#)  
Use the `odacli appliance` commands to perform lifecycle activities for the appliance.
- [odacli Backup and Recovery Commands](#)  
Use the `odacli backup` and `recover` commands to backup to and restore from Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage or disk.
- [odacli CPU Core Commands](#)  
Use the CPU Core commands to enable CPU cores and display current and historical CPU core configurations.
- [odacli Database Commands](#)  
Use the `odacli database` commands to perform database lifecycle operations.
- [odacli DBHome Commands](#)  
Use the `odacli DBHome` commands to manage database Home operations.
- [odacli Database Storage Commands](#)  
Use the Database Storage commands to list, describe, create, and delete Oracle database storage.
- [odacli Job Commands](#)  
Use the `odacli list-jobs` and `odacli describe-job` commands to display job details.
- [Log Commands](#)  
Use the `odacli log` commands to specify the options to collect and delete logs.
- [odacli Oracle Auto Service Request Commands](#)  
Use the Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR) commands to configure, update, test, and delete Oracle ASR on the system.



- [odacli OS Commands](#)  
Use the `odacli` OS commands to list and update operating system (OS) parameters.
- [odaadmcli Hardware Monitoring Commands](#)  
Use the `hardware monitoring` commands to display hardware configurations.
- [Storage Commands](#)  
Understand the commands to perform storage operations and diagnostics.

## About Oracle Database Appliance Command-Line Interface

Three classes of tools are available to perform deployment, lifecycle management, and system administration on Oracle Database Appliance.

The command-line interface (CLI) is an alternative to Oracle Database Appliance Web Console for some appliance configuration and patching tasks, database management, and job activity.

Oracle Database Appliance uses a role-based command-line interface. Use the `odacli` commands to perform lifecycle management tasks and the `odaadmcli` commands to perform storage and hardware monitoring maintenance. Many tasks related to managing Oracle Databases are also required with databases on Oracle Database Appliance. Tasks common to Oracle Database generally are described in the Oracle Database documentation library. However, to simplify tasks, use the Oracle Database Appliance command-line interface. The `odacli` and `odaadmcli` utilities combine the capabilities of the `SYS` database administrator role and the operating system Superuser (`root` user). Always perform administrative tasks using the Oracle Database Appliance Web Console or CLI utilities.

The following classes of commands are available:

- **Deployment and Configuration:** Use the deployment and configuration commands as part of the initial deployment of the appliance and to configure CPU cores.
- **Lifecycle management:** Use `odacli` commands to perform database and system administration tasks for the appliance. The `odacli` commands are the primary interface to perform life cycle activities for the appliance.
- **Administration:** Use `odaadmcli` commands to perform hardware administration tasks for the appliance. The `odaadmcli` commands are the interface for infrequent administration activities needed to manage appliance hardware components, storage, and VLAN.

You can perform the following deployment and configuration tasks:

- Configure the first network in the appliance
- Unzip and copy the Oracle Database Appliance software to the correct locations
- Set the number of CPU Cores for the system

You can perform the following appliance lifecycle tasks with `odacli` commands:

- Create and describe the appliance
- Create, list, describe, and delete databases
- Create, list, describe, and delete Oracle Database Homes
- Create, list, and describe the networks

- List and describe the jobs

You can perform the following appliance administration tasks with `odaadmcli` commands:

- Show storage, disks, diskgroups, and controllers
- Display storage diagnostics for disks and NVMe Express (NVMe)s
- Show server, memory, processor, power, cooling, and network details

Depending on your version of Oracle Appliance Manager and your hardware, some of the `odacli` commands may not be available to you. To see which commands are supported on your version of Oracle Appliance Manager and your hardware, run the `odacli help` command: `odacli -h`.

### Command-Line Interface Syntax

The command-line interface commands and parameters are case-sensitive.

An `odacli` or `odaadmcli` command uses the following command syntax:

```
odacli command [options]
```

- *command* is an action you want to perform on the appliance. For example: `odacli list-networks` or `odacli describe-jobs`.
- *options* are optional parts of the `odacli` command. Options can consist of one or more options that extend the use of the `odacli` command carried out on an object. Options include additional information about the action that you want to perform on the object. Option names are preceded with a dash. Some options require the name of an object for the command to perform the action that you want to carry out. If an option is preceded with an \* (asterisk), this information is required to submit the command. When appending `-j` to the `odacli` command, the output is returned in JSON format. The help option (`-h`) is an option that is available with almost all commands. When you include the `-h` option, you can obtain additional information about the command that you want to perform.

### Example 12-1 Command-Line Interface Syntax

```
# odacli create-database -h

Usage: create-database [options]
Options:
* --adminpassword, -m
    Password for SYS,SYSTEM and PDB Admin
--backupconfigid, -bi
    Backup Config ID
--cdb, -c
    Create Container Database (Inverse option: --no-cdb/-no-c)
--characterset, -cs
    Character Set (default:AL32UTF8)          Default: AL32UTF8
--databaseUniqueName, -u
    database unique name
--dbclass, -cl
    Database Class EE: OLTP/DSS/IMDB, SE: OLTP    Default: OLTP
--dbconsole, -co
    Enable Database Console (Inverse option: --no-dbconsole/-no-co)
```

```

--dbhomeid, -dh
    Database Home ID (Use Existing DB Home)
--dblanguage, -l
    Database Language (default:AMERICAN)          Default: AMERICAN
* --dbname, -n
    Database Name
--dbshape, -s
    Database Shape{odbls,odbl,odb2,etc.}          Default: odbl
--dbstorage, -r
    Database Storage {ACFS|ASM}                   Default: ACFS
--dbterritory, -dt
    Database Territory (default:AMERICA)          Default: AMERICA
--dbtype, -y
    Database Type: SI                               Default: SI
--help, -h
    get help
--instanceonly, -io
    Create Instance Only (For Standby)
--json, -j
    json output
--nlscharacter set, -ns
    NLS Character Set (default:AL16UTF16)          Default: AL16UTF16
--no-cdb, -no-c
    Won't create Container Database (Inverse option: --cdb/-c)
--no-database console, -no-co
    Disable Database Console (Inverse option: --database console/-co)
--pdbadmin, -d
    Pluggable Database Admin User
--pdbname, -p
    Pluggable Database Name
--version, -v
    Database Version
  
```

### Oracle Database Appliance Manager Command-Line Interface Help

Run the `-h` command to see the usage information for all commands available for your Oracle Database Appliance. For example:

```
odacli -h
```

Run `odacli command -h` or `odacliadm command -h` to see detailed help about a specific command. For example, to see detailed help for the `odacli describe-dbhome` command, use the following:

```
odacli describe-dbhome -h
```

## Managing ODACLI Privileges and Security with SUDO

Oracle Appliance Manager command-line utility requires `root` system privileges for most administration actions. You may want to use SUDO as part of your system auditing and security policy.

For most tasks, Oracle recommends that you log in as `root` to use the Oracle Appliance Manager command-line interface on Oracle Database Appliance. If you are not logged in as `root`, then you cannot carry out most actions on the appliance. For example, if you are not logged in as `root`, then you can view storage information, but you cannot modify the storage.

### Allowing Root User Access Using SUDO

In environments where system administration is handled by a different group than database administration, or where security is a significant concern, you may want to limit access to the `root` user account and password. SUDO enables system administrators to grant certain users (or groups of users) the ability to run commands as `root`, while logging all commands and arguments as part of your security and compliance protocol.

A SUDO security policy is configured by using the file `/etc/sudoers`. Within the `sudoers` file, you can configure groups of users and sets of commands to simplify and audit server administration with SUDO commands.

#### **Caution:**

Configuring SUDO to allow a user to perform any operation is equivalent to giving that user `root` privileges. Consider carefully if this is appropriate for your security needs.

### Example 12-2 SUDO Example 1: Allow a User to Perform Any ODACLI Operation

This example shows how to configure SUDO to enable a user to perform any ODACLI operation. You do this by adding lines to the commands section in the `/etc/sudoers` file:

```
## The commands section may have other options added to it.  
##  
Cmd_Alias ODACLI_CMDS=/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli *  
jdoe ALL = ODACLI_CMDS
```

In this example, the user name is `jdoe`. The file parameter setting `ALL= ODACLI_CMDS` grants the user `jdoe` permission to run all `odacli` commands that are defined by the command alias `ODACLI_CMDS`. After configuration, you can copy one `sudoers` file to multiple hosts. You can also create different rules on each host.

#### **Note:**

Before database creation, you must set up user equivalency with SSH for the root user on each server. If you do not set up user equivalency and configure SSH on each server, then you are prompted to provide the root password for each server during database creation.

After you configure the `sudoer` file with the user, the user `jdoh` can run the set of `odacli` commands configured with the command alias `ODACLI_CMDS`. For example:

```
odacli create-database --dbname newdb -m
Password for SYS,SYSTEM and PDB Admin:
```

Job details

```
-----
ID: 1bc31577-f910-4d3f-b6ff-8e3fccd30141
Description: Database service creation with db name: newdb
Status: Created
Created: November 30, 2018 9:23:57 AM PST
Message:
```

Task Name Start Time End Time Status

-----

### Example 12-3 SUDO Example 2: Allow a User to Perform Only Selected ODACLI Operations

To configure SUDO to allow a user to perform only selected ODACLI operations, add lines to the commands section in the `/etc/sudoers` file as follows:

```
## DCS commands for oracle user
Cmdnd_Alias DCSCMDS = /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli describe-appliance
oracle ALL=          DCSCMDS
```

```
$ sudo /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli describe-appliance
```

Appliance Information

```
-----
ID: a977bb04-6cf0-4c07-8e0c-91a8c7e7ebb8
Platform: OdaliteL
Data Disk Count: 6
CPU Core Count: 20
Created: October 24, 2017 6:51:52 AM HDT
```

System Information

```
-----
Name: rwsodal001
Domain Name: example.com
Time Zone: America/Adak
DB Edition: EE
DNS Servers: 10.200.76.198 10.200.76.199 192.0.2.254
NTP Servers: 10.200.0.1 10.200.0.2
```

Disk Group Information

```
-----
DG Name          Redundancy          Percentage
-----
Data             Normal              90
Reco            Normal              10
```

In this example, the user `jdoue2` tries to run the `sudo odacli list-databases` command, which is not part of the set of commands that is configured for that user. SUDO prevents `jdoue2` from running the command.

```
[jdoue2@servernode1 ~]$ sudo /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli list-databases
```

```
Sorry, user jdoue2 is not allowed to execute '/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli list-databases' as root on servernode1.
```

## odacli Network Commands

Use the `odacli network` commands to list and describe network interfaces.

- [odacli configure-firstnet](#)  
Use the command `configure-firstnet` to configure the first network in the appliance after racking and connecting the power and network cables.
- [odacli list-networks](#)  
Use the `odacli list-networks` command to display networks.
- [odacli describe-network](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-network` command to display the details of a specific network.
- [odacli create-network](#)  
Use the `odacli create-network` command to create a network.
- [odacli configure-network](#)  
Use the `odacli configure-network` command to configure a network.
- [odacli update-network](#)  
Use the `odacli update-network` command to update an existing network configuration.
- [odacli delete-network](#)  
Use the command `odacli delete-network` to delete a network.
- [odacli describe-networkinterface](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-networkinterface` command to display the details of any network interface.
- [odacli list-networkinterfaces](#)  
Use the `odacli list-networkinterfaces` command to display network interfaces.

### odacli configure-firstnet

Use the command `configure-firstnet` to configure the first network in the appliance after racking and connecting the power and network cables.

#### File Path

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

#### Syntax

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli configure-firstnet
```

## Usage Notes

This command ensures that the system is available in the network, enabling you to manage the deployment through the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console.

- Bonded network configuration: Bonded dual-ported interface. With the bonded configuration, you can only enable one of the interfaces. The bonded configuration supports VLANs. The bonded network configuration uses `btbond1`. Default setting.
- Non-bonded network configuration: Two separate physical network interfaces, this configuration does not support VLANs. The non-bonded network configuration uses `em2` and `em3` as public interfaces.
- To change a non-bonded network configuration to a bonded configuration, run the Oracle Database Appliance Cleanup Script and redeploy the appliance.

### Example 12-4 Configuring the First Network as a Bonded Network

Configure the first network to use a `btbond1` interface without configuring DHCP. Complete the IP address, netmask address, and gateway address.

Values that you need to provide are shown in *italic font*, with the exception of the `net1` gateway address; the program obtains the gateway IP address. The program derives this gateway address using the network information you provided for the other IP addresses. Accept this value, unless your network administrator provides an alternative gateway address that is different from the default that the appliance command-line interface detects.

The following is an example of the command on a single node platform:

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli configure-firstnet

Select the Interface to configure the network on (btbond1): btbond1
Configure DHCP on btbond1 (yes/no): no
INFO: You have chosen Static configuration
Enter the IP address to configure: 10.1.10.2
Enter the Netmask address to configure: 255.255.255.0
Enter the Gateway address to configure: 10.1.10.1
INFO: Plumbing the IPs now
INFO: Restarting the network
Shutting down interface btbond1: bonding: btbond1: Removing slave em2.
bonding: btbond1: releasing active interface em2
bonding: btbond1: making interface em3 the new active one.
bonding: btbond1: Removing slave em3.
bonding: btbond1: releasing active interface em3
:::~::~:
```

### Example 12-5 Configuring the First Network as a Non-Bonded Network

The following is an example of a non-bonded configuration. For a non-bonded configuration, answer `no` to using a bonding public interface.

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli configure-firstnet
Using bonding public interface (yes/no) [yes]: no
INFO: Breaking the bonding on btbond1
INFO: remove bonding module: rmmod bonding
INFO: remove slave setup in /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-em2
```

```

INFO: remove slave setup in /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-em3
INFO: Restarting the network
Shutting down interface em1: [ OK ]
Shutting down loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface em1: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface em2: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface em3: [ OK ]
INFO: Restarting the DCS agent
initdcsagent stop/waiting
initdcsagent start/running, process 57629
Select the Interface to configure the network on (em2 em3) [em2]:
Configure DHCP on em2 (yes/no) [no]:
INFO: You have chosen Static configuration
Enter the IP address to configure : 10.31.102.101
Enter the Netmask address to configure : 255.255.240.0
Enter the Gateway address to configure[10.31.96.1] :
INFO: Plumbing the IPs now
INFO: Restarting the network
Shutting down interface em1: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface em2: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface em3: [ OK ]
Shutting down loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface em1: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface em2: Determining if ip address 10.31.102.101 is
already in use for device em2...
[ OK ]
Bringing up interface em3: [ OK ]

```

## odacli list-networks

Use the `odacli list-networks` command to display networks.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli list-networks [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--nodeNumber, -u</code>	(Optional) Displays the network interface information for the specified node. By default, the node number is always the first node (Node0).



**Example 12-6 Displaying a List of Networks**

Use the `odacli list-networks` command to display a list of networks:

```
# odacli list-networks
ID                               Name                               NIC
InterfaceType
IP Address      Subnet Mask      Gateway      VlanId
-----
93c07043-3002-494a-8fa0-f3ae932fb4c5  Private-network  ibbond0
BOND
192.168.16.25      255.255.255.0
```

## odacli describe-network

Use the `odacli describe-network` command to display the details of a specific network.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

To display the details of a specific network:

```
odacli describe-network -i id [-j][-u][-h]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
--id, -i	Identifies the network ID. Use the <code>odacli list-networks</code> command to obtain the id.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--nodeNumber, -u	(Optional) Displays the network interface information for the specified node. By default, the node number is always the first node (Node0).

**Example 12-7 Displaying Network Details**

Enter the following command to display the details of network ID 93c07043-3002-494a-8fa0-f3ae932fb4c5:

```
# odacli describe-network -i 93c07043-3002-494a-8fa0-f3ae932fb4c5 -u 1
```

Network details

```
-----
ID: 93c07043-3002-494a-8fa0-f3ae932fb4c5
Name: Private-network
NIC: ibbond0
InterfaceType: BOND
```

```

IP Address: 192.168.16.25
Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
Gateway:
VlanId:
Type: Private
Default: false
Created: November 18, 2018 10:54:16 PM PST

```

## odacli create-network

Use the `odacli create-network` command to create a network.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli create-network [-d|-no-d] -n interface -p ipaddress
-w {Public|Dataguard|Database|Management|Backup|Other} -s subnetmask -g
gateway[-h] [-j] VLAN [-p]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--defaultnetwork, -d</code>	Identifies the default network.
<code>--gateway, -g</code>	Defines the network gateway. The gateway is required for the default network.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--interface, -n</code>	Defines the name of the network interface.
<code>--ipaddress, -p</code>	Defines the network IP address.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--networktype, -w</code>	Defines the type of network. Options are: {Public Dataguard Database Management Backup Other}. The default is Other.
<code>--no-defaultnetwork, no-d</code>	Identifies a network as not the default network. Use <code>--defaultnetwork -d</code> to identify a default network.
<code>subnetmask, -s</code>	Defines the Network Subnet Mask.
<code>VLAN, -p</code>	Add VLAN as a new network.

### Usage Notes

Network of `public` type can only be defined when deploying the appliance or when running `odacli configure-firstnet` during initial provisioning.

Use this command to create an additional network not done in `create-appliance`.

You are only allowed to create a network on the `bond` interface.

**Example 12-8 Creating a Network**

The following example creates a new network, `sfpbond1`, with IP address `192.0.2.15`. The network is an additional network that uses subnet mask `255.255.255.0` and is not a default network.

```
# odacli create-network -n sfpbond1 -p 192.0.2.15 -w Backup -s
255.255.255.0 -no-d
```

**Example 12-9 Creating a VLAN Network**

```
odacli create-network -u 0 -n btbond1 -t VLAN -p 192.0.2.1 -m vlan123
-w Database -s 255.255.255.0 -g 192.0.2.1 -v 123
```

```
odacli create-network -u 1 -n btbond1 -t VLAN -p 192.0.2.1 -m vlan123
-w Database -s 255.255.255.0 -g 192.0.2.1 -v 123
```

## odacli configure-network

Use the `odacli configure-network` command to configure a network.

**File Path**

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

To configure a network:

```
odacli configure-network -publicNet [copper|fiber] -changeNetCard [-j] [-h]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>-publicNet [copper fibre]</code>	Switches the public network interface from copper to fibre or fibre to copper.
<code>-changeNetCard</code>	Configures the network after replacing a network card.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

**Usage Notes**

You cannot modify the public and private interfaces after the system is deployed.

The `-publicNet` and `-changeNetCard` options cannot be used together. You can specify either one at a time.

**Example 12-10 Configuring the network after changing a network card**

```
# odacli configure-network -changeNetCard
```

**Example 12-11 Changing a Network Interface**

```
# odacli configure-network -publicNet copper/fiber
```

## odacli update-network

Use the `odacli update-network` command to update an existing network configuration.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

To update a network:

```
odacli update-network -i id [-p IP address]
[-w [Public|Dataguard|Backup|Other]] [-s network subnet mask]
[-g network gateway] [-j] [-h]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
--id, -i	Defines the network identity.
--gateway, -g	(Optional) Defines the network gateway.
--ipaddress, -p	(Optional) Defines the network IP address.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
--networktype, -w [Public Dataguard Backup Other]	(Optional) Defines the type of network.
subnetmask, -s	(Optional) Defines the Network Subnet Mask.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

**Usage Notes**

You cannot modify the Public and Private-interfaces after the system is deployed.

The system has both SFP+ and 10GBaseT bonded pairs, which means that one of them is used for the public, and you can configure the other after deployment if you want additional connectivity. For example, if you want a backup network.

**Example 12-12 Updating a Network**

The following example updates network ID 192.0.0.2 and designates the network as a backup network:

```
# odacli update-network -i 192.0.0.2 -w Backup
```

## odacli delete-network

Use the command `odacli delete-network` to delete a network.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To delete a network:

```
odacli delete-network -i id [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--id, -i</code>	Defines the network identity.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Usage Notes

You cannot delete the Public-network or Private-network after the system is deployed.

### Example 12-13 Deleting a Network

The following example deletes a backup network with a network ID of 55db39db-d95c-42c5-abbd-b88eb99b83ec.

```
# odacli delete-network -i 55db39db-d95c-42c5-abbd-b88eb99b83ec
```

```
"jobId" : "c26d217e-419b-4a91-8680-7b06bcfe9828",
"status" : "Running",
"message" : null,
"reports" : [ {
  "taskId" : "TaskSequential_137",
  "taskName" : "deleting network",
  "taskResult" : "Running",
  "startTime" : "October 18, 2019 23:14:32 PM EDT",
  "endTime" : "October 18, 2019 23:14:32 PM EDT",
  "status" : "Running",
  "taskDescription" : null,
  "parentTaskId" : "TaskSequential_135",
  "jobId" : "c26d217e-419b-4a91-8680-7b06bcfe9828",
  "tags" : [ ],
  "reportLevel" : "Info",
  "updatedAt" : "October 18, 2019 23:14:32 PM EDT"
}, {
  "taskId" : "TaskZJsonRpcExt_142",
```

```

    "taskName" : "Setting up Network",
    "taskResult" : "Network setup success",
    "startTime" : "October 18, 2019 23:14:32 PM EDT",
    "endTime" : "October 18, 2019 23:14:32 PM EDT",
    "status" : "Success",
    "taskDescription" : null,
    "parentTaskId" : "TaskParallel_141",
    "jobId" : "c26d217e-419b-4a91-8680-7b06bcfe9828",
    "tags" : [ ],
    "reportLevel" : "Info",
    "updatedAtTime" : "October 18, 2019 23:14:32 PM EDT" } ],
  "createTimestamp" : "October 18, 2019 23:14:32 PM EDT",
  "description" : "Network service delete",
  "updatedAtTime" : "October 18, 2019 23:14:32 PM EDT"
}

```

## odacli describe-networkinterface

Use the `odacli describe-networkinterface` command to display the details of any network interface.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To display the details of a specific network interface:

```
odacli describe-networkinterface -i id [-j][-h][-u]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
--id, -i	Identifies the network interface ID. Use the <code>odacli list-networks</code> command to obtain the <code>id</code> .
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--nodeNumber, -u	(Optional) Displays the network interface information for the specified node. By default, the node number is always the first node (Node0).

### Usage Notes

By default, this command always displays the network interface description of the first node (Node0). To display the description of another node, specify the node number option (-u).

**Example 12-14 Displaying Network Details**

Enter the following command to display the details of network interface with ID fe1bf0a7-f56e-44cd-9a84-f374c0aa4b61:

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli describe-networkinterface
-i fe1bf0a7-f56e-44cd-9a84-f374c0aa4b61 -u 1
```

Network Interface details

```
-----
                ID: fe1bf0a7-f56e-44cd-9a84-f374c0aa4b61
                Name: eth2
                NIC: eth2
                Type: PHYSICAL
                Members: eth2
                Slave Interface: true
                Created: October 16, 2018 1:16:59 PM PDT
```

## odacli list-networkinterfaces

Use the `odacli list-networkinterfaces` command to display network interfaces.

**File Path**

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli`

**Syntax**

```
odacli list-networkinterfaces [-j] [-h] [-u]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--nodeNumber, -u</code>	(Optional) Displays the network interface information for the specified node. By default, the node number is always the first node (Node0).

**Example 12-15 Displaying a List of Network Interfaces**

Use the `odacli list-networkinterfaces` command to display a list of network interfaces:

```
# odacli list-networkinterfaces -u 1
ID                                     Name
NIC          Type
-----
d5907a23-1c5d-48c7-8d47-2c188ed43ddd   bond0
bond0          BOND
4f7ea558-9a43-42a9-8e08-6bfdf3a33229   bond1
```

```
bond1          BOND
743ced8d-bbe5-4987-b316-5fdf95d5e60b    eth0
eth0          PHYSICAL
a4121f9e-e694-4852-a521-44efc6ef3fde    eth1
eth1          PHYSICAL
c62c5f04-aa93-4783-a3a7-275bf9fab2d9    eth2
eth2          PHYSICAL
bda21dad-5c1c-4073-89e5-798b8fce8533    eth3
eth3          PHYSICAL
0141f1ac-5c34-4393-8b99-76094b6f795c    ib0
ib0           PHYSICAL
e8cb138a-087f-4739-bb8d-90b1d903aeb6    ib1
ib1           PHYSICAL
a31cfd63-fb90-4cbb-a2fb-382c5e33983b    ibbond0
ibbond0      BOND
```

## odacli Apply Patch and Update Commands

Use the commands `odacli update` and `apply patch` to apply patches and update the appliance.

- [odacli describe-component](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-component` command to display the installed version and the latest available version for each component.
- [odacli describe-latestpatch](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-latestpatch` command to display a list of the latest supported patch versions for each component.
- [odacli create-prepatchreport](#)  
Use the `odacli create-prepatchreport` command to run pre-checks for patching.
- [odacli describe-prepatchreport](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-prepatchreport` command to display the pre-check report, with a list of pre-checks run with status and comments.
- [odacli list-prepatchreports](#)  
Use the `odacli list-prepatchreports` command to display all pre-check reports, with a list of pre-checks run with status and comments.
- [odacli cleanup-patchrepo](#)  
Use the `odacli cleanup-patchrepo` command to delete obsolete or old patches from the repository.
- [odacli list-availablepatches](#)  
Use the `odacli list-availablepatches` command to display all available patches for Oracle Database Appliance.
- [odacli delete-prepatchreport](#)  
Use the `odacli delete-prepatchreport` command to delete any pre-check report.
- [odacli list-agentconfig-parameters](#)  
Use the `odacli list-agentconfig-parameters` command to list configuration variables used by the appliance.



- [odacli update-agentconfig-parameters](#)  
Use the `odacli update-agentconfig-parameters` command to modify configuration variables used by the appliance.
- [odacli update-dbhome](#)  
Use the `odacli update-dbhome` command to update a specific RDBMS Home to the latest patch bundle version.
- [odacli update-dcsadmin](#)  
Use the `odacli update-dcsadmin` command to update the DCS admin components for Zookeeper upgrade.
- [odacli update-dcscomponents](#)  
Use the `odacli update-dcscomponents` command to update the DCS components such as the DCS agent and Zookeeper.
- [odacli update-dcsagent](#)  
Use the `odacli update-dcsagent` command to update the agent.
- [odacli update-registry](#)  
Use the `odacli update-registry` command to update the registry of components when you apply patches manually.
- [odacli update-repository](#)  
Use the `odacli update-repository` command to update the repository with the new Oracle Database Appliance software.
- [odacli update-server](#)  
Use the `odacli update-server` command to update the operating system, firmware, Oracle Appliance Kit, Oracle Clusterware, and all other infrastructure components.
- [odaadmcli orachk](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli orachk` command to check configuration settings for Oracle Database Appliance components.
- [odacli update-storage](#)  
Use the `odacli update-storage` command to update the storage.

## odacli describe-component

Use the `odacli describe-component` command to display the installed version and the latest available version for each component.

If there are multiple DB Homes installed in Oracle Database Appliance, then the output will display the version details for each of the installed homes. You can use this command to check the component version after applying a patch.

### File Path

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli describe-component [-d][-j][-h][-s][-v]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
--dbhomes, -d	(Optional) Lists the database home versions and available versions.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
--local	(Optional) Describes the components for the local node. Use to display details on the local node of multi-node high availability (HA) systems. This option is not needed to display component details on single node systems.
--node, -v	(Optional) Describes the components for a specific node on multi-node high availability (HA) systems. This option is not needed to display component details on single node systems. {0 1}
--server, -s	(Optional) Lists the server components and versions and the available versions to which you can patch them.

## Usage Notes

Use the `odacli describe-component` command to get component details. On a multi-node environment, the command provides details across all nodes. Use the `--node` or `--local` option to get component details for a specific node.

### Example 12-16 Displaying Patch Details for Components for Oracle Database Appliance Release 19.518.5

```

System Version
-----
18.7.0.0.0

System node Name
-----
node1

Local System Version
-----
18.7.0.0.0

Component                               Installed Version   Available
Version
-----
OAK                                       18.7.0.0.0         up-to-date

GI                                       18.7.0.0.190716   up-to-date

DB {
[ OraDB11204_home1,OraDB11204_home2 ]   11.2.0.4.190716   up-to-date
[ OraDB12102_home1,OraDB12102_home2 ]   12.1.0.2.190716   up-to-date
[ OraDB12201_home1,OraDB12201_home2 ]   12.2.0.1.190716   up-to-date
[ OraDB18000_home1,OraDB18000_home2 ]   18.7.0.0.190716   up-to-date

```

```

}

DCSAGENT                    18.7.0.0.0                up-to-date

ILOM                        4.0.4.40.r130348          up-to-date

BIOS                        41060300                  up-to-date

OS                           6.10                      up-to-date

FIRMWARECONTROLLER         13.00.00.00              up-to-date

FIRMWAREEXPANDER           0306                      up-to-date

FIRMWAREDISK {
[ c0d0,c0d1 ]                0112                      0121
[ c1d0,c1d1,c1d2,c1d3,c1d4,c1d5,c1d6,
c1d7,c1d8,c1d9,c1d10,c1d11,c1d12,c1d13,
c1d14,c2d0,c2d1,c2d2,c2d3,c2d4,c2d5,
c2d6,c2d7,c2d8,c2d9,c2d10,c2d11,c2d12,
c2d13,c2d14 ]                A38K                      up-to-date
[ c1d15,c1d16,c1d17,c1d18,c1d19,c1d20,
c1d21,c1d22,c1d23,c2d15,c2d16,c2d17,
c2d18,c2d19,c2d20,c2d21,c2d22,c2d23 ]
}                               A122                      up-to-date

ASR                          18.3.1                    up-to-date

```

System node Name

-----

node2

Local System Version

-----

18.7.0.0.0

Component Version	Installed Version	Available
-----	-----	-----
OAK	18.7.0.0.0	up-to-date
GI	18.7.0.0.190716	up-to-date
DB {		
[ OraDB11204_home1,OraDB11204_home2 ]	11.2.0.4.190716	up-to-date
[ OraDB12102_home1,OraDB12102_home2 ]	12.1.0.2.190716	up-to-date
[ OraDB12201_home1,OraDB12201_home2 ]	12.2.0.1.190716	up-to-date
[ OraDB18000_home1,OraDB18000_home2 ]	18.7.0.0.190716	up-to-date
}		
DCSAGENT	18.7.0.0.0	up-to-date
ILOM	4.0.4.40.r130348	up-to-date

BIOS	41060300	up-to-date
OS	6.10	up-to-date
FIRMWARECONTROLLER	13.00.00.00	up-to-date
FIRMWAREEXPANDER	0306	up-to-date
FIRMWAREDISK {		
[ c0d0,c0d1 ]	0112	0121
[ c1d0,c1d1,c1d2,c1d3,c1d4,c1d5,c1d6,c1d7,c1d8,c1d9,c1d10,c1d11,c1d12,c1d13,c1d14,c2d0,c2d1,c2d2,c2d3,c2d4,c2d5,c2d6,c2d7,c2d8,c2d9,c2d10,c2d11,c2d12,c2d13,c2d14 ]	A38K	up-to-date
[ c1d15,c1d16,c1d17,c1d18,c1d19,c1d20,c1d21,c1d22,c1d23,c2d15,c2d16,c2d17,c2d18,c2d19,c2d20,c2d21,c2d22,c2d23 ]	A122	up-to-date
}		

**Example 12-17 List DB Home Details**

```
# odacli describe-component -d

System Version
-----
18.7.0.0.0

System node Name
-----
node1

Local System Version
-----
18.7.0.0.0

Component                               Installed Version   Available
Version
-----
DB                                       12.2.0.1.190716   up-to-date

System node Name
-----
node2

Local System Version
-----
18.7.0.0.0

Component                               Installed Version   Available
Version
```

```
-----
-----
DB                               12.2.0.1.190716          up-to-date
```

**Example 12-18 List the Server Components and Versions**

```
# odacli describe-component -s
System Version
```

```
-----
18.7.0.0.0
```

```
System node Name
```

```
-----
node1
```

```
Local System Version
```

```
-----
18.7.0.0.0
```

Component Version	Installed Version	Available
OAK	18.7.0.0.0	up-to-date
GI	18.7.0.0.190716	up-to-date
ILOM	4.0.4.38.r130206	up-to-date
BIOS	52010400	up-to-date
OS	6.10	up-to-date

```
System node Name
```

```
-----
node2
```

```
Local System Version
```

```
-----
18.7.0.0.0
```

Component Version	Installed Version	Available
OAK	18.7.0.0.0	up-to-date
GI	18.7.0.0.190716	up-to-date
ILOM	4.0.4.38.r130206	up-to-date
BIOS	52010400	up-to-date
OS	6.10	up-to-date

## odacli describe-latestpatch

Use the `odacli describe-latestpatch` command to display a list of the latest supported patch versions for each component.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli describe-latestpatch [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.

### Example 12-19 Listing the Latest Supported Versions

```

# odacli describe-latestpatch

componentType  availableVersion
-----
gi             18.7.0.0.190716
db             18.7.0.0.190716
db             12.2.0.1.190716
db             12.1.0.2.190716
db             11.2.0.4.190716
oak            18.7.0.0.0
asr            18.3.1
ilom           3.0.16.22.f.r100119
ilom           4.0.2.31.r126282
ilom           4.0.4.41.r130359
ilom           4.0.4.37.r130617
ilom           4.0.0.24.r121140
ilom           4.0.4.40.r130348
ilom           4.0.4.38.r130206
os             6.10
bios           17140300
bios           30150300
bios           25080100
bios           41060300
bios           38130200
bios           39090000
bios           52010400
firmwareexpander 0342
firmwareexpander 001e
firmwareexpander 0306
firmwaredisk   a901
firmwaredisk   0r3q

```

```
firmwaredisk      a29a
firmwarecontroller 11.05.03.00
firmwarecontroller qdv1rf30
firmwarecontroller vdv1ry03
firmwarecontroller 20.08.01.14
firmwarecontroller 2.11.1280
firmwarecontroller 13.00.00.00
firmwarecontroller 4.650.00-7176
firmwarecontroller kpyair3q
dcsagent          18.7.0.0.0
firmwaredisk      a7e0
firmwaredisk      a4c0
firmwaredisk      a72a
firmwaredisk      a880
firmwaredisk      a122
firmwaredisk      a38k
firmwaredisk      c122
firmwaredisk      944a
firmwaredisk      9440
firmwaredisk      e12b
firmwaredisk      5g08
firmwaredisk      a902
firmwaredisk      a140
firmwaredisk      sa03
firmwaredisk      0b25
firmwaredisk      sf04
firmwaredisk      c38k
firmwaredisk      a3a0
firmwaredisk      pd51
firmwaredisk      m554
firmwaredisk      0121
firmwaredisk      xc311102
```

## odacli create-prepatchreport

Use the `odacli create-prepatchreport` command to run pre-checks for patching.

Patching pre-checks help identify and remedy any problems before attempting to patch, and ensure all components are ready for updates.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli create-prepatchreport -v -s
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--dbhome, -d</code>	(Optional) Specifies the database home component for running the pre-checks.
<code>--dbhomeid, -i</code>	(Optional) Specifies the IDs of the database homes for running the pre-checks.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--local, -l</code>	(Optional) Runs patch pre-checks only on the local node.
<code>--node, -n</code>	(Optional) Runs patch pre-checks on specified nodes.
<code>--server, -s</code>	(Optional) Specify this option to run the patch pre-checks for the server components.
<code>--version, -v</code>	(Optional) Specifies the version for running the pre-checks.

## Usage Notes

Use the `odacli create-prepatchreport` command to generate a pre-check report. Use the `--node` or `--local` option to run the patch pre-checks on specific nodes or the local node.

### Example 12-20 Creating Pre-Check Report

```
# odacli create-prepatchreport -v 19.5 -s
Job details
-----
                ID: e54ff307-84d1-40e4-b604-4b3e47f315de
Description: Run pre-checks for patching
      Status: Created
      Created: May 18, 2018 6:14:18 AM GMT
      Message:
Task Name      Start Time      End Time      Status
-----
```

## odacli describe-prepatchreport

Use the `odacli describe-prepatchreport` command to display the pre-check report, with a list of pre-checks run with status and comments.

Patching pre-checks help identify and remedy any problems before attempting to patch, and ensure all components are ready for updates.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli describe-prepatchreport -i
```



## Parameters

Parameter	Description
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
--jobid, -i	Specifies the Job ID for the pre-check report.

## Usage Notes

Use the `odacli describe-prepatchreport` command to display the pre-check report.

### Example 12-21 Displaying the Patch Pre-Checks Report

```
# odacli describe-prepatchreport -i 39ef1eeb-70d3-47ad-b3f5-48960ca0607b
Patch pre-check report
```

```
-----
                Job ID: 39ef1eeb-70d3-47ad-b3f5-48960ca0607b
        Description: Pre-Check report for patching [GI, ILOM, OS]
                Status: COMPLETED
                Result: One or more pre-checks failed for [GI]

Node Name
-----
node n1
Pre-Check          Status
Comments
-----
__OS__
Validate patching tag          Success    Validated patching tag:
12.2.1.2.0
Is patch location available    Success    Patch location is
available
Verify OS patch                Success    There are no packages
available
                                     for an
update
__ILOM__
Validate patching tag          Success    Validated patching tag:
12.2.1.2.0
Is patch location available    Success    Patch location is
available
Checking Ilom patch Version    Success    Successfully verified the
versions
Patch location validation      Success    Successfully validated
location
__GI__
Is clusterware running        Success    Clusterware is
running
Validate patching tag          Success    Validated patching tag:
12.2.1.2.0
Validate available space        Success    Validated free space under /
```

```

u01
Is system provisioned          Success    Verified system is
provisioned
Validate minimum agent version Success    GI patching enabled in
current
                                     DCSAGENT
version
Validate GI patch metadata     Failed    Internal error
encountered:
                                     patchmetadata for
12.2.1.2.0
                                     missing target version for
GI.
Is patch location available    Success    Patch location is
available
Patch location validation      Failed    Internal error
encountered:
                                     specified
location
Patch verification             Failed    Internal error encountered:
Unable
                                     to get patch number on
node
                                     n1.
Opatch updation                Success    Successfully updated the
opatch in
                                     GiHome /u01/app/12.2.0.1/grid
on
Patch conflict check           Failed    Internal error
encountered:
                                     Invalid patch location in
metadata.

```

### Example 12-22 Example of a Successful Patch Pre-Checks Report

```
# odacli describe-prepatchreport -i aec9373c-96aa-43ce-9aae-8091ec9cd4eb
Patch pre-check report
```

```

-----
                Job ID: aec9373c-96aa-43ce-9aae-8091ec9cd4eb
                Description: Pre-Check report for patching [DB]
                Status: COMPLETED
                Result: All pre-checks succeeded
Node Name
-----
node1
Pre-Check          Status
Comments
-----
__DB__
Validate patching tag          Success    Validated patching tag:
12.2.1.2.0
Validate available space      Success    Validated free space

```

required			under /
u01			
Is system provisioned	Success	Verified system is	
provisioned			
Is patch location available	Success	Patch location is	
available			
Validate minimum agent version	Success	Validated minimum agent	
version			
Verify DBHome patch tag	Success	Verified DB Home patch	
tag			
Is GI upgraded	Success	Validated GI is	
upgraded			
Patch location validation	Success	Successfully validated	
location			
Patch verification	Success	Patch 26710464 not applied on	
DB			
home			
Is patch rollback required	Success	No DB patch is required to	
rollback			
Opatch update	Success	Successfully updated the	
opatch in			
DbHome			
Patch conflict check	Success	No patch conflicts found on	
DBHome			

## odacli list-prepatchreports

Use the `odacli list-prepatchreports` command to display all pre-check reports, with a list of pre-checks run with status and comments.

Patching pre-checks help identify and remedy any problems before attempting to patch, and ensure all components are ready for updates.

### File Path

`/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli`

### Syntax

`odacli list-prepatchreports [-h] [-j]`

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.

## Usage Notes

Use the `odacli list-prepatchreports` command to display all pre-check reports.

### Example 12-23 Displaying All Patch Pre-Checks Reports

```
# odacli list-prepatchreports
ID      Description      Created              Status
-----
8a8a14b5-1b5e-4eeb-8ba9-c8136fb4eea1      Patch pre-checks for [DB]: DbHome
is OraDB12102_home1
May 16, 2018 7:00:56 PM PDT              Running
2c9a747d-a452-4e48-bcab-9c7cd9f5f35b      Patch pre-checks for
[STORAGE]
May 16, 2018 6:53:23 PM PDT              Success
f3b9c7c1-3061-4577-848d-645669d71f72      Patch pre-checks for [OS, ILOM,
GI]
May 16, 2018 7:00:56 PM PDT              Running
```

## odacli cleanup-patchrepo

Use the `odacli cleanup-patchrepo` command to delete obsolete or old patches from the repository.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli`

### Syntax

```
odacli cleanup-patchrepo [-cl clones] | [-v version [-comp component]] | [-l local|-n NodeID]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--clones, -cl</code>	Specifies the option to clean up clone files (DB and GI) from the repository <code>/opt/oracle/oak/pkgrepos/orapks/clones/</code> .
<code>--version, -v</code>	Defines the Oracle Database Appliance release you want to delete. For example, 12.2.1.4.0.
<code>--component, -comp</code>	A comma-separated list of components as <code>{DB,GI}</code> to cleanup for a specific Oracle Database Appliance patch version. The default is both <code>{DB,GI}</code> .
<code>--local, -l</code>	(Optional) Cleans up the repository on the local node.

Parameter	Description
--node, -n	(Optional) Cleans up the repository on the specified nodes.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output.

### Usage Notes

- Use the command to free up space in the patch repository.
- This command does not delete the current patches or latest installed patch repository.

### Example 12-24 Deleting RDBMS and GI components for a specific release

```
# odacli cleanup-patchrepo -cl -comp db,gi -v 12.2.1.4.0
{
  "jobId" : "d915ffc0-c7f6-49cf-8ddd-ab5d2ad9072f",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : ,
  "createTimestamp" : "April 17, 2019 06:44:28 AM UTC",
  "resourceList" : ,
  "description" : "Cleanup patchrepos",
  "updatedAtTime" : "April 17, 2019 06:44:28 AM UTC"
```

### Example 12-25 Deleting Clone Files

```
# odacli cleanup-patchrepo -cl
{
  "jobId" : "5d8549a2-1a5e-4b4f-9867-c1f671c659c4",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : ,
  "createTimestamp" : "April 17, 2019 06:43:45 AM UTC",
  "resourceList" : ,
  "description" : "Cleanup patchrepos",
  "updatedAtTime" : "April 17, 2019 06:43:45 AM UTC"
}
```

## odacli list-availablepatches

Use the `odacli list-availablepatches` command to display all available patches for Oracle Database Appliance.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

## Syntax

```
odacli list-availablepatches [-h] [-j]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.

## Usage Notes

Use the `odacli list-availablepatches` command to display all available patches for Oracle Database Appliance.

### Example 12-26 Displaying All Patch Pre-Checks Reports

```
# odacli list-availablepatches
latest Patch Version
-----
18.3.0.0.0

Available Patches   Db Version
-----
18.3.0.0.0          12.2.0.1.180717, 12.1.0.2.180717, 11.2.0.4.180717
```

## odacli delete-prepatchreport

Use the `odacli delete-prepatchreport` command to delete any pre-check report.

## File Path

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

## Syntax

```
odacli delete-prepatchreport -i Report ID
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
<i>Report ID</i>	Describes the ID of the report to be deleted.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

## Usage Notes

Use the `odacli delete-prepatchreport` command to delete pre-check reports.

**Example 12-27 Deleting A Patch Pre-Checks Report**

```
# odacli delete-prepatchreport -i 741f635b-7c75-4832-8813-782367f1e6fd
```

## odacli list-agentconfig-parameters

Use the `odacli list-agentconfig-parameters` command to list configuration variables used by the appliance.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

```
odacli list-agentconfig-parameters [-h] [-j] [-n]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--name, -n</code>	Specifies the name of the parameter.

**Usage Notes**

Use the `odacli list-agentconfig-parameters` command to list configuration variables used by the appliance.

**Example 12-28 Example Command**

```
./odacli list-agentconfig-parameters -n HttpProxyPort
```

```
Name      Value      Description      Updated
-----
HttpProxyPort  Http proxy server port      June 24, 2018 4:14:10 AM
UTC
./odacli list-agentconfig-parameters
Name      Value      Description      Updated
-----
HttpProxyHost  Http proxy server host      June 24, 2018 4:14:10 AM UTC
```

```

HttpProxyPort  Http proxy server port  June 24, 2018 4:14:10 AM
UTC

HttpsProxyHost  Https proxy server host  June 24, 2018 4:14:10 AM
UTC

HttpsProxyPort  Https proxy server port  June 24, 2018 4:14:10 AM
UTC

OSPatchRepos Repo list for OS patching June 24, 2018 4:14:10 AM UTC

```

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Agent Proxy Settings for Object Store Access](#)  
If the Object Store IP address is accessible only through proxy setup by the Oracle Database Appliance server, then define the proxy setting for the agent, so that the agent can access the Object Store.

## odacli update-agentconfig-parameters

Use the `odacli update-agentconfig-parameters` command to modify configuration variables used by the appliance.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli update-agentconfig-parameters
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--append, -a</code>	(Optional) Appends the parameter values. For example, <code>-n p1 -v v1 -n p2 -v v2 -a</code> . The default is false.
<code>--comment, -c</code>	(Optional) Specifies the comment for the parameter.
<code>--description, -d</code>	(Optional) Specifies the description of the parameter.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--name, -n</code>	Specifies the name of the parameter. Provide multiple parameter values in the format <code>-n p1 -v v1 -n p2 -v v2</code> .



Parameter	Description
<code>--reset, -r</code>	Resets the parameter to the default value. For example: <code>-n p1 -n p2 -r</code> . The default is false.
<code>--update, -u</code>	Replaces the parameter with the specified value. For example: <code>-n p1 -v v1 -n p2 -v v2 -u</code> . The default is false.
<code>--value, -v</code>	Specifies the value of the parameter. Provide multiple parameter values in the format <code>-n p1 -v v1 -n p2 -v v2</code> .

### Usage Notes

Use the `odacli update-agentconfig-parameters` command to modify configuration variables used by the appliance. The supported configuration parameters are `HttpsProxyHost`, `HttpsProxyPort`, and `OSPatchRepos`.

Multiple values can be specified. For High-Availability models, the command sets the parameter values on both nodes in the cluster.

### Example 12-29 Setting Multiple Parameters

```
# odacli update-agentconfig-parameters -n HttpsProxyPort -v 80 -d "Http
proxy port"
-n HttpsProxyPort -v 80 -d "Https proxy port" -u

update-agentconfig-parameters -n HttpsProxyPort -n HttpProxyPort -r

update-agentconfig-parameters -n HttpsProxyHost -v 90 -a

update-agentconfig-parameters -n OSPatchRepos -v
```

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Agent Proxy Settings for Object Store Access](#)  
If the Object Store IP address is accessible only through proxy setup by the Oracle Database Appliance server, then define the proxy setting for the agent, so that the agent can access the Object Store.

## odacli update-dbhome

Use the `odacli update-dbhome` command to update a specific RDBMS Home to the latest patch bundle version.

### File Path

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli update-dbhome -i dbhomeid -v version [-j] [-h] [-v]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--dbhomeid, -i</code>	Defines the Oracle Database Home to update.
<code>--help-h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--precheck, -p</code>	Analyzes the patch.
<code>--version, -v</code>	Defines the Oracle Database Appliance version to update. For example, 12.2.1.1.

## Usage Notes

- The `update-dbhome` command applies the latest release update (RU) for Oracle Database home.
- To be updated with the latest patches, the database must be running.
- Only databases in the `Configured` status are updated. Use the `odacli list-database` command to see a list of configured databases. Databases in any other status are skipped during the update.

### Example 12-30 Updating an Oracle Database Home

To apply the latest patch bundle to update an Oracle Database:

```
# odacli update-dbhome -i ad6c7326-e460-411e-94df-230dedbef743 -v
19.5.0.0.0
```

## odacli update-dcsadmin

Use the `odacli update-dcsadmin` command to update the DCS admin components for Zookeeper upgrade.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli update-dcsadmin -v version [-j] [-h]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--version, -v</code>	Defines the Oracle Database Appliance version after update.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.

## Usage Notes

The `update-dcsadmin` command sets up the `dcsadmin` and other components. Run the `update-dcsadmin` command only after you update the DCS agent.

### Example 12-31 Updating DCS Admin

```
# odacli update-dcsadmin -v 18.7.0.0.0
{
  "jobId" : "4c238b93-e641-4f9d-9f86-93d0574dd234",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : "July 12, 2019 03:11:53 AM UTC",
  "resourceList" : [ ],
  "description" : "DcsAdmin patching",
  "updatedAt" : "July 12, 2019 03:11:53 AM UTC"
}
```

## odacli update-dcscomponents

Use the `odacli update-dcscomponents` command to update the DCS components such as the DCS agent and Zookeeper.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli`

### Syntax

```
odacli update-dcscomponents -v version [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--version, -v</code>	Defines the Oracle Database Appliance version after update.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.

## Usage Notes

The `update-dcscomponents` command sets up the `dcscomponents` such as Zookeeper.

### Example 12-32 Updating DCS Components

```
# odacli update-dcscomponents -v 18.7.0.0.0
{
  "jobId" : "4c238b93-e641-4f9d-9f86-93d0574dd234",
```

```

    "status" : "Created",
    "message" : null,
    "reports" : [ ],
    "createTimestamp" : "July 12, 2019 03:11:53 AM UTC",
    "resourceList" : [ ],
    "description" : "DcsComponents patching",
    "updatedAt" : "July 12, 2019 03:11:53 AM UTC"
  }

```

## odacli update-dcsagent

Use the `odacli update-dcsagent` command to update the agent.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli update-dcsagent -v version [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--version, -v</code>	Defines the Oracle Database Appliance version after update.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.

### Usage Notes

The `update dcsagent` command updates the `dcs-agent` to the RPM package that is located in the *location* and restarts the `dcs-agent`. After the update is applied, the agent automatically restarts. It will take a few minutes to reconnect to the `dcs-agent`. Wait until the agent shuts down and completes restarting before performing any tasks.

#### Note:

Before updating the agent, ensure that you do not have any jobs running or pending during the update window.

### Example 12-33 Updating the Agent

To update the `dcs-agent` to version 19.5:

```

# odacli update-dcsagent -v 19.5
{
  "jobId" : "77e454d3-eb68-4130-a247-7633f8d6192b",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,

```

```

    "reports" : [ ],
    "createTimestamp" : "October 18, 2019 14:09:24 PM CST",
    "description" : "DcsAgent patching",
    "updatedAtTime" : "October 18, 2019 14:09:24 PM CST"
  }

```

## odacli update-registry

Use the `odacli update-registry` command to update the registry of components when you apply patches manually.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli update-registry -n component [-f] [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--component, -n</code>	Defines the Oracle Database Appliance component for the registry update. The values can be <code>system {gihome, dbnode, sysinstance}</code> or <code>all {dbhome, db, dbstorage, asr}</code> . You can also specify the individual component to be refreshed. <b>Note:</b> Refresh system components before you refresh all components.
<code>-f</code>	(Optional) Forces the refresh of the specified component even if it already exists in the appliance registry metadata.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.

### Usage Notes

The `update-registry` command updates the registry of components when you apply patches manually..

#### Example 12-34 Updating the Registry with the -force option

```
# odacli update-registry -n system
DCS-10112:Specified components are already discovered.
```

Using force flag option to rediscover and update the sytem components though it already exists in appliance registry

```
# odacli update-registry -n system -f
```

Job details

```

-----
ID: 752b56d8-2bcd-4a29-ab96-196925fc5c13
Description: Discover System Components : system

```

```
Status: Created
Created: July 31, 2019 1:02:51 PM UTC
Message:
```

```
Task Name Start Time End Time Status
-----
```

```
# odacli describe-job -i 752b56d8-2bcd-4a29-ab96-196925fc5c13
```

```
Job details
-----
```

```
ID: 752b56d8-2bcd-4a29-ab96-196925fc5c13
Description: Discover System Components : system
Status: Success
Created: July 31, 2019 1:02:51 PM UTC
Message:
```

```
Task Name Start Time End Time Status
-----
```

```
Rediscover SysInstance July 31, 2019 1:02:51 PM UTC July 31, 2019 1:03:24
PM UTC Success
Rediscover DBNode July 31, 2019 1:03:24 PM UTC July 31, 2019 1:03:24 PM
UTC Success
Rediscover GiHome July 31, 2019 1:03:24 PM UTC July 31, 2019 1:03:26 PM
UTC Success
```

## odacli update-repository

Use the `odacli update-repository` command to update the repository with the new Oracle Database Appliance software.

### Prerequisites

Before updating the repository, you must upload the Oracle Database Appliance software to the appliance. If the patch contains more than one zip file, then extract and concatenate the zip files before updating the repository.

### File Path

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To unpack and copy the patch bundle to the correct locations in the file system:

```
odacli update-repository -f filename [-j] [-h]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--filename, -f</code>	Defines the zip filename of patch bundle or RDBMS clones downloaded from My Oracle Support. Provide a comma-separated list of absolute file paths of the end user and patch bundles.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

## Usage Notes

- Before updating the repository, ensure that you do not have any jobs running or pending during the update window.
- Upload the patches to `dom0` on `Node0`. On multi-node systems, the DCS-Agent copies the patch to `Node1` and updates the patch repository on both nodes.

### Example 12-35 Updating the Repository

The server patch zip file is located in the `/u01/tmpdir` directory. The following example updates the repository with the latest server patch and then lists the job to verify that the update is successful:

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli update-repository -f /tmp/oda-
sm-18.7.0.0.0-190911-server1of2.zip,/tmp/oda-sm-18.7.0.0.0-190911-
server2of2.zip
{
  "jobId" : "d3510276-da05-447b-990e-6d30964f8f79",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : "/u01/tmpdir/oda-sm-12.2.1.1.0-171031-server.zip",
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : "October 18, 2019 14:13:45 AM CST",
  "description" : "Repository Update",
  "updatedAtTime" : "October 18, 2019 14:13:45 AM CST"
}
[root@oak1 tmpdir]# ./odacli list-jobs
# odacli list-jobs
ID                               Description
Created                          Status
-----
6f27a29a-959f-44e1-b984-7473e3c918ad  Server Patching  October 18, 2019
14:19:05 AM CST      Success
```

## odacli update-server

Use the `odacli update-server` command to update the operating system, firmware, Oracle Appliance Kit, Oracle Clusterware, and all other infrastructure components.

### File Path

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli update-server -v version [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--precheck, -p</code>	Analyzes the patch.
<code>--version, -v</code>	Defines the version to update.
<code>--local, -l</code>	Updates the server on the local node of multi-node high availability (HA) systems. This option is not needed for single-node systems.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Usage Notes

The `update-server` command applies the patches to various infrastructure components and Oracle Clusterware.

After the update is applied, the agent automatically restarts. It will take a few minutes to reconnect to the server. Wait until the agent shuts down and completes restarting before performing any tasks. Allow at least two (2) minutes before running the next command.

#### Note:

Before updating the server, ensure that you do not have any jobs running or pending during the update window.

### Example 12-36 Updating the Server

Run the `odacli update-server` command to update the server to 19.5.0.0.0. On a multi-node HA system, you must run the command on both nodes to update the server version.

```
# odacli update-server -v 19.5.0.0.0
{
  "jobId" : "6f27a29a-959f-44e1-b984-7473e3c918ad",
  "status" : "Created",
```



```

    "message" : "Success of Server Update may trigger reboot of node after
4-5 minutes.
Please wait till node restart",
    "reports" : [ ],
    "createTimestamp" : "October 18, 2019 14:13:45 PM CST",
    "resourceList" : [ ],
    "description" : "Server Patching",
    "updatedAt" : "October 18, 2019 14:13:45 PM CST"
}

```

## odaadmcli orachk

Use the `odaadmcli orachk` command to check configuration settings for Oracle Database Appliance components.

### File Path

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

To perform diagnostic checks of components:

```
odaadmcli orachk [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
Components such as <code>-a</code> , <code>-acchk</code> , <code>-applypatch</code> , <code>-autostop</code>	(Optional) Specifies the comma-separated list of components for which you want to collect data. Specify the component to be checked in the command. For example: <code># odaadmcli orachk -a</code>
<code>--verbose</code>	Displays detailed message.

### Usage Notes

The `odaadmcli orachk` command invokes `orachk` from the directory `opt/oracle.SupportTools/orachk`.

### Example 12-37 Running odaadmcli orachk

```

[root@oak bin] # ./odaadmcli orachk
INFO: 2019-09-04 16:41:26: Running orachk under /opt/oracle.SupportTools/
orachk

```

**Example 12-38 Running odaadmcli orachk for a component**

```
[root@oak bin] # ./odaadmcli orachk -a
INFO: 2019-09-19 10:45:16: Running orachk under /usr/bin/orachk
Checking ssh user equivalency settings on all nodes in cluster for root
```

## odacli update-storage

Use the `odacli update-storage` command to update the storage.

**File Path**

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

```
odacli update-storage -v version [-h] [-j] [-r]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>--version, -v</code>	Defines the version to update.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--rolling, -r</code>	(Optional) Enables to patch shared disks in rolling fashion without stopping Oracle Clusterware. The shared disks must be online.

**Usage Notes****Example 12-39 Updating the Storage**

```
# odacli update-storage -v 19.5.0.0.0
```

## odacli Appliance Commands

Use the `odacli appliance` commands to perform lifecycle activities for the appliance.

- [odacli create-appliance](#)  
Use the `odacli create-appliance` command in a JSON file format to provision Oracle Database Appliance.
- [odacli describe-appliance](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-appliance` command to display appliance details.
- [odacli describe-system](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-system` command to display details about components installed on the system.

- [odacli list-featuretracking](#)  
Use the `odacli list-featuretracking` command to display the latest feature tracking report.
- [odacli-adm set-credential](#)  
Use the `odacli-adm set-credential` command to change the `oda-admin` user credentials.

## odacli create-appliance

Use the `odacli create-appliance` command in a JSON file format to provision Oracle Database Appliance.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To view help for the `odacli create-appliance` command:

```
odacli create-appliance -r requestjson [-j][-h]
```



### Note:

The `odacli create-appliance` command only supports a JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) file format. An example JSON files and a readme are available in an appendix in this document and in the `/opt/oracle/dcs/sample` directory.

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--requestjson, -r</code>	JSON input for appliance creation.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

## odacli describe-appliance

Use the `odacli describe-appliance` command to display appliance details.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli describe-appliance [-d|-b][-j][-h]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
--details, -d	(Optional) Displays the agent CLI build details.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
--bom, -b	(Optional) Displays BOM information.

### Example 12-40 Displaying Appliance Details

```
# odacli describe-appliance -d

Appliance Information
-----
ID: 78e9a6b8-c4f8-42b2-9e72-7d23c2636544
Platform: OdaliteL
Data Disk Count: 6
CPU Core Count: 20
Created: October 18, 2019 5:14:41 AM EST
```

#### System Information

```
-----
Name: rwsoda6f002
Domain Name: example.com
Time Zone: America/New_York
DB Edition: EE
DNS Servers: 10.204.32.1
NTP Servers: 10.68.0.41 10.68.0.42
```

#### Disk Group Information

```
-----
DG Name      Redundancy  Percentage
-----
Data         High        80
Reco         High        20
```

## odacli describe-system

Use the `odacli describe-system` command to display details about components installed on the system.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

## Syntax

To list jobs and view job details and status:

```
odacli describe-system [-h] [-b] [-d] [-j]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--bom, -b	(Optional) Displays the bill of materials for the installed components on the appliance.
--details, -d	(Optional) Display on the command-line, the details of all installed components on the appliance.

## Usage Notes

Do not provide both options `-b` and `-d` at the same time, in the command.

### Example 12-41 Example Command to View the Bill of Materials from the Command Line for Bare Metal Deployments

```
# odacli describe-system -b
ODA Components Information
-----
Component Name          Comonent
Details
-----
-----
NODE                    Name : rwsoda6m003
                        Domain Name :
                        Time Stamp : July 29, 2018 7:00:12 PM UTC

RPMS                    Installed RPMS : acl-2.2.49-7.el6_9.1.x86_64,
                        aide-0.14-11.el6.x86_64,
                        alsa-lib-1.1.0-4.el6.x86_64,
                        at-3.1.10-49.el6.x86_64,
                        atk-1.30.0-1.el6.x86_64,
                        attr-2.4.44-7.el6.x86_64,
                        audit-2.4.5-6.el6.x86_64,
                        audit-
                        libs-2.4.5-6.el6.x86_64,
                        audit-libs-
                        python-2.4.5-6.el6.x86_64,
                        augeas-
                        libs-1.0.0-10.el6.x86_64,
```

```
authconfig-6.1.12-23.el6.x86_64,  
libs-0.6.25-17.el6.x86_64,  
openfwf-5.2-10.el6.noarch,  
basesystem-10.0-4.0.1.el6.noarch,  
libs-9.8.2-0.62.rc1.el6_9.5.x86_64,  
utils-9.8.2-0.62.rc1.el6_9.5.x86_64,  
binutils-2.20.51.0.2-5.47.el6_9.1.x86_64,  
biosdevname-0.7.2-1.el6.x86_64,  
utils-1.2-10.el6.x86_64,  
busybox-1.15.1-21.el6_6.x86_64,  
libs-1.0.5-7.el6_0.x86_64,  
certificates-2017.2.14-65.0.1.el6_9.noarch,  
celt051-0.5.1.3-0.el6.x86_64,  
checkpolicy-2.0.22-1.el6.x86_64,  
chkconfig-1.3.49.5-1.el6.x86_64,  
ppl-0.15.7-1.2.el6.x86_64,  
libcap1-1.10-1.x86_64,  
+-33-3.2.3-69.el6.x86_64,  
readline5-5.2-17.1.el6.x86_64,  
+-4.8.2-16.el6.x86_64,  
ConsoleKit-0.4.1-6.el6.x86_64,  
libs-0.4.1-6.el6.x86_64,  
x11-0.4.1-6.el6.x86_64,  
coreutils-8.4-46.0.1.el6.x86_64,  
libs-8.4-46.0.1.el6.x86_64,  
avahi-  
b43-  
bash-4.1.2-48.el6.x86_64,  
bc-1.06.95-1.el6.x86_64,  
bind-  
bind-  
bridge-  
bzip2-1.0.5-7.el6_0.x86_64,  
bzip2-  
ca-  
cairo-1.8.8-6.el6_6.x86_64,  
clog-  
compat-  
compat-libstdc+  
compat-  
compat-sap-c+  
ConsoleKit-  
ConsoleKit-  
coreutils-  
cpio-2.10-13.el6.x86_64,  
cpp-4.4.7-18.el6.x86_64,
```

```

cpupowerutils-1.3-2.el6.x86_64,
cpuspeed-1.5-22.0.1.el6.x86_64,
cracklib-2.8.16-4.el6.x86_64,
dicts-2.8.16-4.el6.x86_64,
crash-7.1.4-1.0.1.el6_7.x86_64,
crda-3.13_2015.10.22-3.el6.x86_64,
createrepo-0.9.9-27.el6_9.noarch,
cronie-1.4.4-16.el6_8.2.x86_64,
anacron-1.4.4-16.el6_8.2.x86_64,
luks-1.2.0-11.el6.x86_64,
libs-1.2.0-11.el6.x86_64,
libs-1.4.2-78.el6_9.x86_64,
....
....
....

```

cracklib-  
cronie-  
crontabs-1.10-33.el6.noarch,  
cryptsetup-  
cryptsetup-luks-  
cups-

## odacli list-featuretracking

Use the `odacli list-featuretracking` command to display the latest feature tracking report.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

Use the `odacli list-featuretracking` command to display the latest feature tracking report.

```
odacli list-featuretracking [-h] [-j]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

**Example 12-42 Example Command to View the Features Report from the Command Line**

```
# odacli list-featuretracking
```

DCS Feature Tracking Report

```
Last collection date: 10/26/18 15:35
Report version:      1.0
```

-----

DCS Feature Usage Summary

Detected	Total	Last Usage	Currently	
Feature Name	Usages	Samples	Time	Used
Object Store	12	12	10/26/18 15:35	TRUE
Automatic Service Request (ASR)	0	12		FALSE
Storage Expansion Shelf	0	12		FALSE

-----

DCS High Water Mark Statistics

Measured Feature Name	High Water
Mark	Category
Maximum usage of CPU	8.12
%	DCS Agent
Maximum usage of Memory	437.12
MB	DCS Agent
Maximum number of threads	
150	DCS Agent
Maximum number of open file descriptors	
257	DCS Agent
Maximum number of Databases	
1	Database
Maximum number of EE Databases	
1	Database
Maximum number of SE Databases	
0	Database
Maximum number of CDBs	
1	Database
Maximum number of non-CDBs	
0	Database
Maximum number of RAC Databases	
1	Database
Maximum number of RAC One Databases	
0	Database
Maximum number of Single Instance Databases	



0	Database	
Maximum number of PDBs		
0	Database	
Maximum number of Datafiles		
7	Database	
Maximum number of Database Homes		
1	Database	
Maximum number of Flashback Databases		
0	Database	
Maximum size of a Database		6.40
GB	Database	
Minimum Database version		
18.0.0.0.0	Database	
Maximum Database version		
18.0.0.0.0	Database	
Maximum number of Backups		
12	Database	
Maximum number of NFS Backups		
0	Database	
Maximum number of Object Store Backups		
12	Database	
Maximum number of Disk Backups		
0	Database	
Maximum number of Regular-L0 Backups		
0	Database	
Maximum number of Regular-L1 Backups		
1	Database	
Maximum number of ArchiveLog Backups		
9	Database	
Maximum number of Longterm Backups		
2	Database	
Maximum interval between Database Backups		0 Day(s),
01:01:06	Database	
Maximum number of Object Store tenants		
1	Object Store	
Maximum number of enabled CPU cores		
12	Server	
Maximum number of disks		
24	Storage	
Maximum number of ASM Disks Groups		
3	Storage	
Maximum size of ASM Disk Groups		11.46
TB	Storage	
Maximum usage of ASM Disk Groups		1.70
%	Storage	
Maximum number of ASM Disks Groups with redundancy 'NORMAL'		
0	Storage	
Maximum number of ASM Disks Groups with redundancy 'HIGH'		
3	Storage	
Maximum number of ASM Disks Groups with redundancy 'EXTERN'		
0	Storage	
Maximum number of ASM Disks Groups with redundancy 'FLEX'		
0	Storage	
Maximum ASM Disk Groups compatibility		
18.0.0.0.0	Storage	

Minimum ASM Disk Groups compatibility		
18.0.0.0.0	Storage	
Maximum number of non-ACFS file systems		
4	Storage	
Maximum size of non-ACFS file systems		98.31
GB	Storage	
Maximum usage of non-ACFS file systems		82.71
%	Storage	
Maximum number of ACFS file systems		
1	Storage	
Maximum size of ACFS file systems		5.00
GB	Storage	
Maximum usage of ACFS file systems		12.19
%	Storage	

## odacli-adm set-credential

Use the `odacli-adm set-credential` command to change the `oda-admin` user credentials.

### Syntax

To reset the `oda-admin` user credentials in interactive mode:

```
odacli-adm set-credential --password --username username [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--password, -p</code>	Agent password. The Agent password is needed to access the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console.
<code>--username, -u</code>	User name required to access the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console. The default user name is <code>oda-admin</code> .
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Usage Notes

Only `root` user can reset the `oda-admin` user credentials.

### Example 12-43 Resetting the `oda-admin` Password in Interactive Mode

To reset the `oda-admin` user password to a new password in interactive mode:

```
# odacli-adm set-credential --password --username oda-admin
Agent password: password
```

## odacli Backup and Recovery Commands

Use the odacli backup and recover commands to backup to and restore from Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage or disk.

Topics:

- [odacli create-backup](#)  
Use the command `odacli create-backup` to create a Level 0, Level 1, archivelog, or Longterm backup.
- [odacli create-backupconfig](#)  
Use the command `odacli create-backupconfig` to create a backup configuration.
- [odacli create-objectstoreswift](#)  
Use the command `odacli create-objectstoreswift` to create and store the Oracle credential details required to backup to Oracle Object Store.
- [odacli delete-backup](#)  
Use the command `odacli delete-backup` to delete backups.
- [odacli delete-backupconfig](#)  
Use the command `odacli delete-backupconfig` to delete a backup configuration.
- [odacli delete-objectstoreswift](#)  
Use the command `odacli delete-objectstoreswift` to delete the credentials for the ObjectStore account.
- [odacli describe-backupreport](#)  
Use the command `odacli describe-backupreport` to display details of a specific backup report.
- [odacli describe-schedule](#)  
Use the command `odacli describe-schedule` to display details for a specific schedule.
- [odacli irestore-database](#)  
Use the command `odacli irestore-database` to restore a database from one system to other system from ObjectStore based on a LongTerm BackupReport.
- [odacli list-backupreports](#)  
Use the command `odacli list-backupreports` to display a list of all backup reports.
- [odacli list-backupconfigs](#)  
Use the command `odacli list-backupconfig` to list all backup configurations.
- [odacli list-objectstoreswifts](#)  
Use the command `odacli list-objectstoreswifts` to display a list of credentials for the ObjectStore account.
- [odacli list-schedules](#)  
Use the command `odacli list-schedules` to display a list of the scheduled backups.

- [odacli recover-database](#)  
Use the `odacli recover-database` command to recover or restore a database from backup.
- [odacli update-backupconfig](#)  
Use the command `odacli update-backupconfig` to update a backup configuration.
- [odacli update-database](#)  
Use the command `odacli update-database` to associate a backup configuration to a database.
- [odacli update-objectstoreswift](#)  
Use the command `odacli update-objectstoreswift` to change the credentials for the ObjectStore account.
- [odacli update-schedule](#)  
Use the command `odacli update-schedule` to update the schedule for a database, or to disable the database backup schedule.

## odacli create-backup

Use the command `odacli create-backup` to create a Level 0, Level 1, archive log, or Longterm backup.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli create-backup -iDatabase Resource ID [-bt] [-c] [-h] [-j] [-k] [-t]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--backupType, -bt {Regular-L0 Regular-L1 Longterm archivelog}</code>	Defines the type of backup. The options are not case sensitive.
<code>--component, -c {Database}</code>	(Optional) Defines the component. Database is the only supported option.
<code>--dbid, -i</code>	Defines the Database Resource ID.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--keepDays, -k</code>	Defines the Keep Days. For Longterm Backup Type only.
<code>--tag, -t</code>	Defines the name of the backup. A tag is alphanumeric, up to 30 characters. Required for Longterm Backup Type.

## Usage Notes

- Use the command `odacli create-backup` for a specified Database Resource ID and provide a tag for the backup name. Use up to 30 alphanumeric characters for the backup name tag. Three types of backups are available:
  - Level 0: An RMAN incremental backup that backs up all data blocks in the data files being backed up. An incremental backup at level 0 is identical in content to a full backup, but unlike a full backup, the level 0 backup is part of an incremental backup strategy.
  - Level 1: An RMAN incremental backup that includes only those blocks that have been changed since the "parent" backup was taken. A parent backup can be either a level 0 or a level 1 backup. If you do not select a backup type (level 0, level 1, or LongTerm), a level 1 backup is performed.
  - Longterm: Longterm backups are only available when backing up to Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage (Oracle Object Storage).
  - Archivelog: This option is used to perform backup of all archivelogs not yet backed up to the backup destination, such as Internal FRA, External FRA (NFS location), or Object Store.
- This command creates a Backup Report with a Resource ID. To get the ID, use the command `odacli describe-job -i job_id-j` and look for the `resourceId` attribute in `resourceList`.

### Example 12-44 Create a Manual Database Backup

Create a long term backup that is kept for 90 days and named q12018HR.

```
# odacli create-backup -i Database Resource ID -bt Longterm -c database
-k 90 -t q12018HR
```

### Example 12-45 Create a Level 0 Database Backup

Create a Level 0 backup named 2017Dec22ProductionLevel0 for resource ID 20576eb1-bc32-4e34-bf97-fda0b60ca15b

```
# odacli create-backup -i20576eb1-bc32-4e34-bf97-fda0b60ca15b -bt Regular-
L0 -t 2017Dec22ProductionLevel0
```

## odacli create-backupconfig

Use the command `odacli create-backupconfig` to create a backup configuration.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli create-backupconfig -n backup configuration name -d
backup destination{Disk|ObjectStore|NFS|None} [-c] [-cr] [-h] [-j] [-no-
cr] [-o][w]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--backupdestination, -d {Disk ObjectStore NFS None}</code>	Defines the backup destination. The options are not case sensitive.
<code>--container, -c</code>	(Optional) Defines the object store container.
<code>--crosscheck, -cr</code>	(Optional) Enable crosscheck.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--name, -n</code>	Defines the backup configuration name.
<code>--no-crosscheck, -no-cr</code>	(Optional) Disable crosscheck.
<code>--objectstoreswiftId, -o</code>	(Optional) Defines the swift object store credential ID.
<code>--recoverywindow, -wDisk: {1-14}   ObjectStore: {1-31}</code>	(Optional) Defines the Recovery Window in days. {1-14} days for Disk and {1-31} days for Object Storage in the cloud.

## Usage Notes

- The recovery window that is defined in the backup configuration determines when backups are considered obsolete. The following are guidelines:
  - Disk: 1-14 days
  - Object Storage: 1-31 days

### Example 12-46 Create a Backup Configuration for Disk

Create a backup configuration named `production` that backs up to disk with a 14 day recovery window.

```
# odacli create-backupconfig -d Disk -n production -w 14
```

### Example 12-47 Create a Backup Configuration for NFS Location

Create a backup configuration named `production` that backs up to NFS with a 2 day recovery window.

```
odacli create-backupconfig -d NFS -n NfsPolicy1 -c /tmp/Nfsbackps -w 2
```

## odacli create-objectstoreswift

Use the command `odacli create-objectstoreswift` to create and store the Oracle credential details required to backup to Oracle Object Store.

### File Path

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

## Syntax

```
# odacli create-objectstoreswift -e swift end point URL [-h] [-j] -n
Object Store Swift name [-p] swiftpassword -t Object Store tenant name -u
Object Store user name
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
--endpointurl, -e	Defines the swift end point URL.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
--name, -n	Defines the Object Store Swift name.
--swiftpassword, -p	(Optional) Defines the Object Store Swift password.
--tenantname, -t	Defines the Object Store Swift tenant name.
--username, -u	Defines the Object Store Swift user name.

## Usage Notes

The command creates and stores the Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage credential details in the system and stores the password in an encrypted Oracle wallet. You can attach the credentials to one or more backup configurations.

The credentials are validated during the command `odacli create-backupconfig` with `objectstore` as the destination. The credentials are not validated against endpoint URL and tenancy.

## odacli delete-backup

Use the command `odacli delete-backup` to delete backups.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli delete-backup -iDatabase Resource ID [-br] [-h] [-j]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
--backupreport, -br	(Optional) Defines the backup report. To delete a Long Term backup, use a JSON input file for the backupreport.

Parameter	Description
--dbid, -i	Defines the Database Resource Identifier (ID). To delete a level 0 or level 1 backup, use the database resource ID.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.

### Usage Notes

- Delete older, obsolete level 0 and level 1 backups with the Database Resource ID. The recovery window that is defined in the backup configuration determines when backups are considered obsolete.
- Delete long term backups from Oracle Object Storage by using a JSON file with the --backupreport option.
- To locate the database ID, view the databases in the Web Console or use the command `odacli list-databases`.

### Example 12-48 Delete a Level 0 or Level 1 Backup

```
# odacli delete-backup -i20576eb1-bc32-4e34-bf97-fda0b60ca15b
```

### Example 12-49 Delete a Long Term Backup Report

Delete a Long Term backup using a JSON input file for the Backup Report. In this example, `backupreport.json` is the JSON input for the `backupreport`.

```
# odacli delete-backup -i 20576eb1-bc32-4e34-bf97-fda0b60ca15b -br
backupreport.json
```

## odacli delete-backupconfig

Use the command `odacli delete-backupconfig` to delete a backup configuration.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli delete-backupconfig -i backup configuration id [-h] [-j]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.



Parameter	Description
--id, -i	Defines the Backup Config identifier (ID).
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.

### Usage Notes

You cannot delete a backup configuration if it is attached to a database.

### Example 12-50 Deleting a Backup Configuration

Delete a backup configuration named `production` that backs up to disk with a 14 day recovery window.

```
# odacli delete-backupconfig -d Disk -n production -w 14
```

## odacli delete-objectstoreswift

Use the command `odacli delete-objectstoreswift` to delete the credentials for the ObjectStore account.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
# odacli delete-objectstoreswift [-h] [-j] -i Object Store Swift id
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
--objectstoreswiftid, -i	Defines the Object Store Swift identifier (ID).

### Usage Notes

You cannot delete the Object Store credentials if they are attached to a backup configuration.

### Example 12-51 Deleting the Oracle Object Store Credentials

```
# odacli delete-objectstoreswift -i Object Store Swift id
```

## odacli describe-backupreport

Use the command `odacli describe-backupreport` to display details of a specific backup report.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli describe-backupreport [-h] [-j] [-i]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--id, -i</code>	Defines the backup report ID.

### Example 12-52 Display Details of a Specific Backup Report

```

# odacli describe-backupreport -i 2d82460c-d648-4e75-8c7d-72cc90bc442a
{
  "id" : "2d82460c-d648-4e75-8c7d-72cc90bc442a",
  "dbResId" : "b5fc646e-01a6-4c8b-8286-7633346c4329",
  "tag" : null,
  "dbId" : "2717054291",
  "dbName" : "ExampleDB",
  "dbUniqueName" : "ExampleDBu",
  "backupType" : "REGULAR-L1",
  "keepDays" : null,
  "backupLocation" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/dbaasimage/
backupbucket",
  "cfBackupHandle" : "c-2717054291-20180108-04",
  "spfBackupHandle" : "c-2717054291-20180108-04",
  "pitrTimeStamp" : "January 08, 2018 12:43:14 PM UTC",
  "pitrSCN" : "1175058",
  "resetLogsTimeStamp" : "January 08, 2018 09:55:34 AM UTC",
  "resetLogsSCN" : "1112268",
  "oraHomeVersion" : "12.2.0.1.170814 (26723265, 26609817)",
  "sqlPatches" : "25811364,26609817",
  "backupLogLoc" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/dbaasimage/
backupbucket/scaoda702c1n1/rmanlog/ExampleDBu/2717054291/2018-01-08/
rman_backup_2018-01-08_12-42-41.0545.log",
  "tdeWalletLoc" : null,
  "dbConfigLoc" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/dbaasimage/
backupbucket/scaoda702c1n1/dbconfig/ExampleDBu/2717054291/2018-01-08/
DBCONFIG_TAG20180108T124407_2018-01-08_12-44-07.0533.tar.gz",
  "name" : "Backup_Report_ExampleDB",
  "createTime" : "January 08, 2018 12:42:08 PM UTC",

```

```

    "state" : {
      "status" : "CONFIGURED"
    },
    "updatedAtTime" : "January 08, 2018 12:44:12 PM UTC",
    "backupReportLogDetail" : "https://swiftobjectstorage.example.com/v1/
dbaasimage/backupbucket/scaoda702c1n1/rmandetaillogreport/ExampleDBu/
2717054291/2018-01-08/
rman_list_backup_detail_2018-01-08_12-44-04.0362.log",
    "dbInfo" : {
      "dbClass" : "OLTP",
      "dbType" : "RAC",
      "dbShape" : "odbl",
      "dbEdition" : "EE",
      "dbStorage" : "ASM"
    },
    "dbDataSize" : "1542M",
    "dbRedoSize" : "16403M"
  }
}

```

## odacli describe-schedule

Use the command `odacli describe-schedule` to display details for a specific schedule.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
# odacli describe-schedule [-h] [-j] [-i]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--scheduleid, -id</code>	Defines the schedule with an identifier (ID).

### Example 12-53 Display Schedule Details

```
# odacli describe-schedule -i scheduleid
```

## odacli irestore-database

Use the command `odacli irestore-database` to restore a database from one system to other system from ObjectStore based on a LongTerm BackupReport.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli`

### Syntax

```
odacli irestore-database -iDatabase Resource ID [-bp] [-r] [-cl] [-co]
[-s] [-dr] [-y] [-h] [-j] [-c] [-oid] [-tp] [-tf] [-bl] [-rDBID]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--backupPassword(s), -bp</code>	(Optional) Defines the RMAN password for recovery. You can provide more than one password, but the passwords must be separated by a comma(.).
<code>--backupReport, -r</code>	JSON input for a backup report.
<code>--dbClass, -cl {EE: OLTP/DSS/IMDB, SE: OLTP}</code>	(Optional) Defines the Database class.
<code>--dbConsoleEnable, -co</code>	(Optional) Enables the Database Console.
<code>--dbShape, -s {odb1,odb2, and so on}</code>	(Optional) Defines the database shape.
<code>--dbStorage, -dr {ACFS ASM}</code>	(Optional) Defines the database storage. Database Storage {ACFS ASM} (non case-sensitive). The default is ASM.
<code>--dbType, -y</code>	(Optional) Defines the type of database. The default is single instance (SI).
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--noOfRmanChannels, -c</code>	(Optional) Defines the number of RMAN channels (parallelism) Default: SE Edition: 1, Other Enterprise Editions: 5
<code>--objectStoreId, -oid</code>	Defines the Swift Object Store credential ID
<code>--sysPassword, -m</code>	Defines the password for the SYS user.
<code>--tdePassword, -tp</code>	(Optional) Defines the password for the TDE Wallet.
<code>--tdefilesLocation, -tf</code>	(Optional) Identifies the TDE Wallet location in Objectstore.
<code>--backuplocation, -bl</code>	(Optional) Specifies the NFS or local directory path where backups are available.

Parameter	Description
<code>--dbRedundancy, -rd</code>	<p>Specifies the database redundancy value, that is, {HIGH MIRROR}. To specify the <code>dbRedundancy</code> option, at least one disk group of FLEX redundancy must exist, and <code>dbStorage</code> must be ASM, and the <code>dbVersion</code> or <code>dbHomeVersion</code> must later than 12.1.</p> <p>If the disk group redundancy is FLEX, then the default <code>dbRedundancy</code> value is MIRROR.</p> <p>The precedence logic for setting the <code>dbRedundancy</code> is:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <code>dbRedundancy</code> that is specified in the <code>irestore-database</code> command.</li> <li>2. <code>dbRedundancy</code> in the backup report</li> <li>3. If the disk group redundancy is FLEX, then the default <code>dbRedundancy</code> value is MIRROR.</li> </ol>
<code>-rDBID</code>	Enables target database to run in the same system as source database.

### Usage Notes

- The command `odacli irestore-database` restores a database to a system using the Backup Report of a long term backup that is in the Oracle Object Store. You can restore a database from one appliance to another appliance, or to the same appliance after the source database is deleted.
- An Oracle wallet (ObjectStoreSwift credentials) must be created to access the backups in Oracle Object Store. This command performs the environment checks, validation checks, and tasks needed to restore a database to an Oracle Database Appliance system.

#### Example 12-54 Restoring a Database to the Same System

Run the command `odacli irestore-database` with the backup report. Enter the SYS user password when prompted.

```
# odacli irestore-database -r backupreport.json -oid Object Store ID -m
```

#### Example 12-55 Restoring a Database to a Different System

To restore to a different system, copy the backup report to the other machine's `\bin` folder (or provide the complete path to the backup report), then run the command `odacli irestore-database` with the backup report. Enter the SYS user password when prompted.

```
# odacli irestore-database -r backupreport.json -oid Object Store ID -m
```

## odacli list-backupreports

Use the command `odacli list-backupreports` to display a list of all backup reports.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
# odacli list-backupreports [-h] [-j]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.

### Usage Notes

Displays a list of all database backup reports generated from the command `odacli create-backup`.

### Example 12-56 Display a List of all Backup Reports

```
# odacli list-backupreports
```

## odacli list-backupconfigs

Use the command `odacli list-backupconfig` to list all backup configurations.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli list-backupconfig [-h] [-j]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.

**Example 12-57 Displaying a List of Backup Configuration**

Display a list of backup configurations.

```
# odacli list-backupconfig -d Disk -n production -w 14
```

## odacli list-objectstoreswifts

Use the command `odacli list-objectstoreswifts` to display a list of credentials for the ObjectStore account.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

```
# odacli list-objectstoreswifts [-h] [-j]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.

**Example 12-58 Displaying a List of ObjectStore Swift Credentials**

```
# odacli list-objectstoreswifts
```

## odacli list-schedules

Use the command `odacli list-schedules` to display a list of the scheduled backups.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

```
# odacli list-schedules [-h] [-j]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

Parameter	Description
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.

### Usage Notes

The command lists all of the schedules in the system, including database backup schedules and some internal maintenance schedules.

### Example 12-59 Display a List of Scheduled Database Backups

Display a list of all scheduled database backups and details.

```
# odacli list-schedules
```

## odacli recover-database

Use the `odacli recover-database` command to recover or restore a database from backup.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli recover-database -iDatabase Resource ID [-br] [-i] [-h]
[-j] [-r] [-t] [-p] [-s] [-in]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--backupReport, -br{Regular-L0 Regular-L1 Longterm}</code>	(Optional) JSON input for a backup report.
<code>--dbName, -in</code>	Defines the Database Name.
<code>--dbid, -i</code>	Defines the Database Resource ID.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--recoveryTimeStamp, -r</code>	(Optional) Defines the date and time of the backup. The Recovery Timestamp (in format mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss) is required when the recovery is a point in time recovery (PITR).
<code>--recoverytype, -t {Latest PITR SCN}</code>	(Optional) Defines the recovery type. Do not provide the recovery type if you define the Backup Report.
<code>--rmanrecoverypassword(s), -p</code>	(Optional) Defines the password for recovery. You can provide more than one password, but the passwords must be within single quote separated by comma(.).
<code>--scn, -s</code>	(Optional) Defines the SCN recovery type. Required when the RecoveryType is SCN.



## Usage Notes

Recovers a database to the latest, a point in time recovery (PITR), or System Change Number (SCN) as input. You can also recover a database from a Backup Report provided as JSON input file.

This command performs various environment and validation checks in order to attempt to ensure that recovery of database is successful. If backups are in ObjectStore, the RMAN recovery passwords are needed to recover the database. This includes RMAN restore and recovery.

This command always performs a full RMAN database restore and recovery. This command is most useful when there is a complete database loss or when the majority of the database files are lost. If you do not require a full RMAN restore, you can perform a manual recovery. For example, a single data file loss or control file loss.

### Example 12-60 Recovering a Database to a Point-in-Time

```
# odacli recover-database -i b5fc646e-01a6-4c8b-8286-7633346c4 -t PITR -r
11/08/2017 12:57:33 -p
```

### Example 12-61 Recovering a Database to the Latest

```
# odacli recover-database -i b5fc646e-01a6-4c8b-8286-7633346c4 -t Latest -p
```

### Example 12-62 Recovering a Database to an SCN

```
# odacli recover-database -i b5fc646e-01a6-4c8b-8286-7633346c4 -t SCN -s
392375947
```

## odacli update-backupconfig

Use the command `odacli update-backupconfig` to update a backup configuration.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli update-backupconfig -n backup configuration name
-d backup destination{Disk|ObjectStore|None} [-c] [-cr] [-h] [-j] [-no-cr]
[-o][-w]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--backupdestination, -d{Disk ObjectStore None}</code>	Defines the backup destination. The options are not case sensitive
<code>--container, -c</code>	(Optional) Defines the object store container.

Parameter	Description
--crosscheck, -cr	(Optional) Enable Crosscheck.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
--name, -n	Defines the backup configuration name.
--no-crosscheck, -no-cr	(Optional) Disable crosscheck.
--objectstoreswiftId, -o	(Optional) Defines the swift object store credential ID.
--recoverywindow, -w Disk: {1-14} ObjectStore: {1-30}	(Optional) Defines the Recovery Window in days. {1-14} days for Disk and {1-30} days for Object store.

### Usage Notes

- The recovery window that is defined in the backup configuration determines when backups are considered obsolete. The following are guidelines:
  - Disk: 1-14 days
  - ObjectStore in Casper: 1-30 days

### Example 12-63 Revise a Backup Configuration for Disk

Create a backup configuration named `production` that backs up to disk with a 14 day recovery window.

```
# odacli update-backupconfig -d Disk -n production -w 14
```

## odacli update-database

Use the command `odacli update-database` to associate a backup configuration to a database.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli update-database [-bi] [-i] [-h] [-j] [-bp] [-in] [-bin] [-id] [-lb] [-no-bkp]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
--backupconfigid, -bi	(Optional) Defines the Backup Config ID.
--backupconfigname, -bin	(Optional) Defines the Backup Config Name.

Parameter	Description
<code>--dbid, -i</code>	Defines the Database Resource ID.
<code>--dbName, -in</code>	Defines the Database Name.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--bkuppassword, -bp</code>	(Optional) Defines the RMAN backup encryption password.
<code>--databaseid, -id</code>	(Optional) Defines the database identifier stored in database file headers.
<code>--levelzerobackupday, -lb</code>	(Optional) Specifies the Level zero Backup Day. For example, Monday Tuesday Wednesday... Sunday
<code>--no-backup, -no-bkp</code>	(Optional) Disables database backups. This command also removes the database backup and archivelog backup schedulers.  To enable database backups again, you must update the database with a backupconfig object.

### Usage Notes

For backup to the Oracle Object Store, you can set an RMAN backup password. The password is encrypted and stored in an Oracle wallet. The password is used when using the command `odacli create-backup` to create a database backup.

### Example 12-64 Associating a Backup Configuration with a Database

```
# odacli update-database -i database resource ID -bi backup
configuration ID
```

### Example 12-65 Updating an Existing Database Using the Resource ID

Update an existing database to attach the backup configuration to the database using the Database Resource ID.

```
# odacli update-database -i d3c4d8f6-5eb7-4f9e-ab27-7bdd5013ac90 -bi
9d942e0a-ba00-4cbc-9bfb-0de83ed279e5 -bp
```

### Example 12-66 Updating an Existing Database Using the Resource Name

Update an existing database to attach the backup configuration to the database using the Database Resource Name.

In the following example, the Database Resource Name is `mydb`:

```
# odacli update-database -in mydb -bi 9d942e0a-ba00-4cbc-9bfb-0de83ed279e5
-bp
```

In the following example, the Database Resource Name is `mydb` and the backup configuration name is `mybcfg`:

```
# odacli update-database -in mydb -bin mybcfg -bp
```

## odacli update-objectstoreswift

Use the command `odacli update-objectstoreswift` to change the credentials for the ObjectStore account.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
# odacli update-objectstoreswift [-h] [-j] -i Object Store Swift id [-p] swift password [-u] Object Store user name
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--objectstoreswiftid, -i</code>	Defines the Object Store Swift identifier (ID).
<code>--swiftpassword, -p</code>	(Optional) Defines the Object Store Swift password.
<code>--username, -u</code>	(Optional) Defines the Object Store Swift user name.

### Usage Notes

Use this command to update the password when it is changed for an ObjectStore account. The command updates the Oracle ObjectStore credential details in the system and stores the password in an encrypted Oracle wallet.

The credentials are validated during the command `odacli update-backupconfig` with `objectstore` as the destination. The credentials are not validated against endpoint URL and tenancy.

### Example 12-67 Changing the Oracle Casper ObjectStore Password

```
# odacli update-objectstoreswift -i Object Store Swift id -p swift password
```

**Example 12-68 Changing the Oracle ObjectStore User Name**

```
# odacli update-objectstoreswift -i Object Store Swift id -u Object Store
user name
```

## odacli update-schedule

Use the command `odacli update-schedule` to update the schedule for a database, or to disable the database backup schedule.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

```
# odacli update-schedule [-x] [-t] [-d] [-e] [-h] [-j] [-id]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>--cronExpression, -x</code>	(Optional) Defines the date and time for the update.
<code>--description, -t</code>	(Optional) Provides a description for the update schedule.
<code>--disable, -d</code>	(Optional) Disables the schedule.
<code>--enable, -e</code>	(Optional) Enables a disabled schedule.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--scheduleid, -id</code>	Defines the schedule with an identifier (ID).

**Usage Notes**

Backups incur overhead on the system. When possible, do not schedule backups to run when users are trying to access data.

Use a utility, such as [www.croncronmaker.com](http://www.croncronmaker.com), to generate a valid cron expression.

**Example 12-69 Change What Time the Backup Occurs**

Edit the cron expression to change the time of scheduled backups for a given schedule ID.

```
# odacli update-schedule -i scheduleid -x "0 0 13 1/1 * ? *" -e
```

**Example 12-70 Disable Scheduled Database Backups**

```
# odacli update-schedule -i scheduleid -d
```

## odacli CPU Core Commands

Use the CPU Core commands to enable CPU cores and display current and historical CPU core configurations.

- [odacli list-cpucores](#)  
Use the `odacli list-cpucores` command lists the history of core configuration changes in the system.
- [odacli describe-cpucore](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-cpucore` command to display the current core configuration and the modification date and time.
- [update-cpucore](#)  
Use the `odacli update-cpucore` command to enable the number of CPU cores in the system.

### odacli list-cpucores

Use the `odacli list-cpucores` command lists the history of core configuration changes in the system.

#### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

#### Syntax

```
odacli list-cpucores [-h]
```

#### Parameters

Parameter	Description
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

#### Example 12-71 Displaying a List of Cores

```
# odacli list-cpucores
```

```
Node  Cores  Modified                               Job Status
-----
0      10     July 22, 2016 12:06:08 PM SGT  Configured
0       8     July 25, 2016 9:39:59 AM SGT  Configured
```

## odacli describe-cpucore

Use the `odacli describe-cpucore` command to display the current core configuration and the modification date and time.

### File Path

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli describe-cpucore [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-72 Displaying the Current Core Configuration

```
# odacli describe-cpucore
```

```
Node  Cores  Modified                               Job Status
-----
0      8      July 25, 2016 9:39:59 AM SGT          Configured
```

## update-cpucore

Use the `odacli update-cpucore` command to enable the number of CPU cores in the system.

### File Path

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli update-cpucore -c cores [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--cores, -c</code>	Defines the number of cores to be enabled in the system.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Usage Notes

- The number of cores you enable must be a multiple of 2.
- After the initial configuration, you cannot reduce the number of cores. You can only increase the number of cores.

### Example 12-73 Enabling CPU Cores

The following command enables 8 CPU cores.

```
# odacli update-cpucore -c 8

{
  "jobId" : "2807f6ae-3ba5-48a5-8941-b8b365d89d24",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : 1469410799194,
  "description" : "CPU cores service update",
  "updatedAtTime" : 1469410799194
}
```

## odacli Database Commands

Use the `odacli database` commands to perform database lifecycle operations.

- [odacli list-databases](#)  
Use the `odacli list-databases` command to list all databases on the appliance.
- [odacli describe-database](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-database` command to display database details.
- [odacli create-database](#)  
Use the `odacli create-database` command to create a new database.
- [odacli clone-database](#)  
Use the `odacli clone-database` command to clone a new database from a source database.
- [odacli modify-database](#)  
Use the `odacli modify-database` command to move a database from one database home to another database home of the same base version, or resize the database, or move and resize databases in the same operation.
- [odacli register-database](#)  
Use the `odacli register-database` command to register a migrated database with the appliance.
- [odacli upgrade-database](#)  
Use the `odacli upgrade-database` command to upgrade a database from a supported release.
- [odacli delete-database](#)  
Use the `odacli delete-database` command to delete a database.



## odacli list-databases

Use the `odacli list-databases` command to list all databases on the appliance.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To display a list of all databases:

```
odacli list-databases [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-74 Displaying a List of Databases

Display a list of databases:

```
# odacli list-databases
```

ID	DB Name	DB Version	CDB
ad6c7326-e460-411e-94df-230dedbef743	rdb121a	19.5.0.0.0	true
fb4d02f3-2413-47ca-8584-a768e23ec2e7	ee12db	19.5.0.0.0	false

(Continued)

Class	Shape	Storage	Status
OLTP	odbl	ACFS	Configured
IMDB	odbl	ASM	Configured

## odacli describe-database

Use the `odacli describe-database` command to display database details.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To display database details:

```
odacli describe-database -i dbid [-h] [-j]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
--dbid, -i	Identifies the database home identifier (ID) to display. Use the <code>odacli list-databases</code> command to obtain the dbid.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-75 Displaying Database Details

Display information for database named `ac48e0d2-a7b0-4ffd-a27e-f8e42b028c5f` :

```
# odacli describe-database -i ac48e0d2-a7b0-4ffd-a27e-f8e42b028c5f
```

```
Database details
```

```
-----
ID: ac48e0d2-a7b0-4ffd-a27e-f8e42b028c5f
Description: rdb1
DB Name: rdb1
DB Version: 19.5.0.0.0
DBID: 1339792271
CDB: true
PDB Name: rlpdb1
PDB Admin User Name: pdbadmin
Class: OLTP
Shape: odb2
Storage: ASM
CharacterSet: DbCharacterSet(characterSet=AL32UTF8,
nlsCharacterSet=AL16UTF16, dbTerritory=AMERICA, dbLanguage=AMERICAN)
Home ID: fe87f30c-b810-45d1-8b96-13996ad7a255
Console Enabled: true
Created: October 18, 2019, 2016 6:21:14 PM
```

## odacli create-database

Use the `odacli create-database` command to create a new database.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli create-database -n database_name -m -cs characterSet -cl {OLTP|DSS|
IMDB}
-l dblanguage -s dbshape -r {ACFS|ASM} -dt dbterritory
-y dbtype -ns nationalCharacterSet -d pdbadmin -p pdbname -v version
[-u databaseUniqueName] [-dh Database Home ID] [-c|-no-c] [-co|-no-co]
[-bi backupconfigid] [-io] [-dn] [-j] [-h] [-rd]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
--adminpassword, -m	Defines the password for SYS, SYSTEM, and PDB Admin. Use this option to specify the password interactively. When using this option, do not enter the password in the command-line.
--backupconfigid, -bi	(Optional) Defines the backup configuration identifier for future use.
--cdb, -c	(Optional) Creates the database as a container database. Use the -c flag to create a container database and use the -no-c flag to create a non-CDB database. The default is -no-c.
--characterset, -cs	Defines the character set. The default is AL32UTF8.
--databaseUniqueName, -u	(Optional) Defines a unique name for the database.
--dbdomainname, -dn	Defines the database domain name.
--dbclass, -cl {OLTP DSS IMDB}	Defines the database class. The default is OLTP. The options are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enterprise Edition: OLTP, DSS, or IMDB.</li> <li>Standard Edition: OLTP</li> </ul>
--dbconsole, -co	(Optional) Enables the Database Console. Use the -no-co flag to disable the Database Console. If not selected, the default is no database console.
--dbhomeid, -dh	(Optional) Identifies the existing Database Home ID.
--dblanguage, -l	Defines the database language. The default language is AMERICAN.
--dbname, -n	Defines the name given to the new database (dbname.)
--dbshape, -s	Identifies the database shape (template) and determines the total memory allocated to the database. For example, odb1 and odb2. The default is odb1. You cannot specify the database shape when you create a instance-only database.
--dbstorage, -r{ACFS ASM}	Defines the Database Storage, either Oracle ACFS or Oracle ASM. The default value is Oracle ASM.
--dbterritory, -dt	Defines the database territory. The default territory is AMERICA.
--dbtype, -y [SI]	Defines the database type. The default database type is SI.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--instanceonly, -io	(Optional) Creates a database instance, password file and also the underlying Oracle ACFS mount point. You can use the instance as an auxiliary instance for RMAN duplicate.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
--nationalscharacterset, -ns	Defines the NLS National Character Set. The default is AL16UTF16.

Parameter	Description
<code>--no-cdb, -no-c</code>	(Optional) Creates a database that is <i>not</i> a container database. Use this flag when you want to create a non-CDB database. Use the <code>-c</code> flag to create a container database.
<code>--no-dbconsole, -no-co</code>	(Optional) Disables Database Console. Use the <code>-co</code> flag to enable Database Console.
<code>--pdbadmin, -d</code>	Defines the Pluggable Database (PDB) Admin User.
<code>--pdbname, -p</code>	Defines the Pluggable Database (PDB) name. The default value is <code>pdb1</code> .
<code>--version, -v</code>	Defines the database bundle patch number. To install the latest bundle patch for a release, specify the release version.  To specify a specific supported bundle, use the 5 digit format. For example, 12.1.0.2.170814 or 11.2.0.4.170814.
<code>--dbRedundancy, -rd</code>	Specifies the database redundancy value, that is, {HIGH   MIRROR}. To specify the <code>dbRedundancy</code> option, at least one disk group of FLEX redundancy must exist, and <code>dbStorage</code> must be ASM, and the <code>dbVersion</code> or <code>dbHomeVersion</code> must later than 12.1.

### Usage Notes

- If the disk group redundancy is FLEX, then the default `dbRedundancy` value is MIRROR.
- Flash cache is disabled by default.
- You cannot mix Oracle Database Standard Edition and Enterprise Edition databases on the same appliance.
- Use the `--cdb` or `--no-cdb` flag to indicate whether or not the database is a container database. When neither flag is specified, the default database created is a non-CDB database.
- When `--dbhomeid` is not provided, the `create-database` command creates a new Oracle Database Home.
- When `--dbhomeid` is provided, the `create-database` command creates the database using the existing Oracle Home. Use the `odacli list-dbhomes` command to obtain the `dbhomeid`.
- When you use the command to create an instance-only database, then you cannot specify the database shape (template).
- When you specify both the `--version` and the `--dbhomeid`, the version is ignored and the database is created against the existing database home.
- Oracle Database 12.1 or later is supported on both Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) and Oracle ASM Cluster file system (ACFS). The default is Oracle ASM.
- Oracle Database 11.2 is only supported on Oracle ACFS.
- When databases are created in Oracle ACFS, each database is configured with its own Oracle ACFS file system for the datafiles and uses the following naming

convention: `/u02/app/db user/oradata/db unique name`. The default size of this mount point is 100 GB.

 **Note:**

Oracle recommends not sharing the mount point across different databases.

- Online logs are stored in the `/u03/app/db user/redo/` directory.
- Oracle Fast Recovery Area (FRA) is located in the `/u03/app/db user/fast_recovery_area` directory.
- Use the following option to specify the `adminpassword`:
  - Interactive mode: Use the `-m` option and enter the password when prompted.
- For the version, you can specify the database version, such as 18.7.0.0, 18.5.0.0, 12.2.0.1, 12.1.0.2 or 11.2.0.4, or you can use a 5 digit format to specify a specific patch bundle version. If you use the database version without specifying the bundle patch number, the latest bundle patch is used.

 **Note:**

Oracle Database 11.2.0.4.160419 is not supported. Attempts to create an Oracle Database 11.2 against an 11.2.0.4.160419 database home will fail.

### Example 12-76 Creating a Database in Interactive Mode

This example creates a 19.5.0.0.0 OLTP container database named `hrdb` with shape `odb2` and enables you to provide the password interactively.

 **Note:**

To provide a password interactively, use the `-m` option, but do not provide the password until prompted.

```
# odacli create-database -n hrdb -c -m -cl OLTP -s odb2 -p pdb1
```

Password for SYS,SYSTEM and PDB Admin:

```
{
  "jobId" : "f12485f2-dcbe-4ddf-aeel-de24d37037b6",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : "October 18, 2019 03:54:03 AM EDT",
  "description" : "Database service creation with db name: hrdb",
  "updatedAt" : "October 18, 2019 03:54:03 AM EDT"
}
```

**Example 12-77 Creating a Database Against a Different Version**

Either of the following statements creates a database against a home with Oracle Database Bundle (170718) applied:

```
# odacli create-database -m -n hrmsdb1 -v 19.5.0.0.0
# odacli create-database -m -n hrmsdb2 -v 19.5.0.0.191015
```

The following statement creates a new database against a home with a specific Oracle Database Bundle:

```
# odacli create-database -m -n hrmsdb3 -v 19.5.0.0.191015
```

## odacli clone-database

Use the `odacli clone-database` command to clone a new database from a source database.

**File Path**

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

```
odacli clone-database [-u] [-n] [-s] [-y|SI|RAC|RACONE] [-j] [-f] [-m] [-p] [-h]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>--databaseUniqueName, -u</code>	(Optional) Defines a unique name for the database. If the <code>--databaseUniqueName</code> option is not provided, then the name of the database is set to the <code>--dbname</code> value.
<code>--dbname, -n</code>	Defines the name given to the new database (dbname.)
<code>--dbshape, -s</code>	Identifies the database shape (template) and determines the total memory allocated to the database. For example, odb1 and odb2. The default is odb1.
<code>--dbtype, -y [SI]</code>	Defines the database type. The default database type is the source database type, if the option is not specified.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--sourcedbname, -f</code>	Specifies the name of the source database
<code>--syspassword, -m</code>	Specifies the password for the SYS user.
<code>--tdepasword, -p</code>	Specifies the password for the source TDE Wallet.

### Usage Notes

- The source database must be up and running.
- The source database must use Oracle ACFS storage.
- The source database must not be a multitenant container database (CDB)

### Example 12-78 Cloning a Database

The following example creates a clone database snap1 from source database acfsdb1.

```
# /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli clone-database -n snap1 -u snaplu -f acfsdb1 -
hm password
```

### Related Topics

- [Cloning an Oracle ACFS Database Using Command Line Interface](#)  
Create a database from an existing Oracle ACFS database using CLI commands.

## odacli modify-database

Use the `odacli modify-database` command to move a database from one database home to another database home of the same base version, or resize the database, or move and resize databases in the same operation.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli`

### Syntax

```
odacli modify-database [-i] [-dh] [-cl] [-s] [-h] [-j]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--databaseid, -i</code>	Defines the Database ID.
<code>--destdbhomeid, -dh</code>	Defines the destination database home ID.
<code>--dbClass, -cl</code>	Defines the database class. The default is OLTP. The options are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enterprise Edition: OLTP, DSS, or IMDB</li> <li>• Standard Edition: OLTP</li> </ul>
<code>--dbShape, -s</code>	Identifies the database shape (template) and determines the total memory allocated to the database. For example, odb1 and odb2. The default is odb1. You cannot specify the database shape for a instance-only database.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.

**Example 12-79 Moving a Database from one Oracle home to another**

```
# ./odacli modify-database -i database_ID -dh destination_database_home_ID
```

**Example 12-80 Modifying the Database Shape (Template) and Database Class**

```
# ./odacli modify-database -s database_shape -cl database_class
odacli modify-database -i 1941d594-c777-4eca-9fce-18b778d5c153 -s odb2 -cl
DSS
{
  "jobId" : "833d43a7-bcc6-48a7-9f98-b42ffdab3fe1",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : "August 26, 2019 06:48:58 AM UTC",
  "resourceList" : [ ],
  "description" : "modify-database service with db ids: 1941d594-
c777-4eca-9fce-18b778d5c153",
  "updatedAt" : "August 26, 2019 06:48:58 AM UTC"
}
```

**Example 12-81 Moving and Resizing a Database**

```
[root@oak1 ~]# odacli modify-database -i f903c7e2-4376-4160-
b989-9222936f4f58 -dh 6a9d4497-c9dd-43f8-baf4-4e3df1ceb27e -s odb2 -cl DSS
{
  "jobId" : "5eff7912-9ff1-420c-9429-9fb21cab800c",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : "September 13, 2019 06:45:10 AM UTC",
  "resourceList" : [ ],
  "description" : "modify-database service with db ids: f903c7e2-4376-4160-
b989-9222936f4f58",
  "updatedAt" : "September 13, 2019 06:45:10 AM UTC"
}
```

## odacli register-database

Use the `odacli register-database` command to register a migrated database with the appliance.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

```
odacli register-database -c {OLTP|DSS|IMDB} -s dbshape -t dbtypeSI
-o hostname -sn servicename -p syspassword[-bi backupconfigid] [-co|-no-
co] [-h][-j]
```



## Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--backupconfigid, -bi</code>	(Optional) Defines the backup configuration identifier for future use.
<code>--dbclass, -c {OLTP DSS IMDB}</code>	Defines the database class. The database class setting determines the database SGA memory and instance PGA memory configuration. The options are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enterprise Edition: OLTP, DSS, or IMDB.</li> <li>Standard Edition: OLTP</li> </ul>
<code>--dbconsole, -co</code>	(Optional) Enables the Database Console. Use the <code>-no-coflag</code> to disable the Database Console. If not selected, the default is no Database Console.
<code>--dbshape, -s</code>	Identifies the database shape (template) and determines the total memory allocated to the database. For example, odb1 and odb2. The default is odb1.
<code>--dbtype, -t [SI]</code>	Defines the type of database. Only single-instance databases can be registered.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--hostname, -o</code>	Defines the host name. Default: local host name
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--no-dbconsole, -no-co</code>	(Optional) Disables Database Console. Use the <code>-coflag</code> to enable Database Console.
<code>--servicename, -sn</code>	Defines the Database Service Name. Using this service name, the EZCONNECT String is derived for connecting to the database. For example, <code>hostname:port/servicename</code> . The Port number is the port configured for the listener, as part of the deployment.
<code>--syspassword, -p</code>	Defines the proxy user password for SYS.
<code>--tdeWalletPassword, -tp</code>	Defines the password for TDE Wallet.

## Usage Notes

### Note:

It is a good practice to use Easy Connect (EZCONNECT) to test the database connectivity before registering the database. Log in as the `sys` user and enter the following command:

```
sqlplus sys/password@//hostname:1521/service name
```

- The `odacli register-database` command is supported only on the primary database.
- The migrated database is registered with the listener configured during the provisioning of the appliance. The migrated database must be in read-write or read-only mode for the registration to succeed.
- The `register-database` command validates the `datafile` and `log file` locations and moves the `controlfile` and `spfile` to the correct locations.
- The following are the minimum compatible parameters set, based on the database version:
  - Oracle Database 18c : 18.3.0.0
  - Oracle Database 12c : 12.1.0.2
  - Oracle Database 11 g : 11.2.0.4
- Some `init.ora` parameters are set, or reset, as part of the registration. Review the parameter changes before and after registration.

The following are examples of changes implemented as part of registration:

- The `memory_target` is reset.
- The `sga_target/pga_aggregate_target/log_buffer/inmemory_size` is configured based on the database class and database shape settings used during registration.
- The registration process sets, or resets, the recommended appliance-specific parameters.
- The database being registered must use Oracle Managed Files and the file location must match the DATA Location, REDO Location and RECO Location of the `odacli describe-dbstorage` command.
- As part of the registration process, the database is registered with Oracle Clusterware. Only the primary database is registered with Oracle Clusterware.

### Example 12-82 Registering a Migrated Database

The following is the syntax to register a single instance OLTP database that is using shape `odbl`.

```
odacli register-database -c OLTP -s odbl -sn crmdb.example.com -p
Password for SYS:
{
  "jobId" : "317b430f-ad5f-42ae-bb07-13f053d266e2",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : "October 18, 2019 05:55:49 AM EDT",
  "description" : "Database service registration with db service name:
crmdb.example.com",
  "updatedAt" : "October 18, 2019 05:55:49 AM EDT"
}
rpsandrap: ]# odacli describe-job -i "317b430f-ad5f-42ae-bb07-13f053d266e2"
```

Job details

```
-----
ID: 317b430f-ad5f-42ae-bb07-13f053d266e2
```

```

Description: Database service registration with db service
name: crmdb.example.com
Status: Success
Created: October 18, 2019 5:55:49 AM EDT
Message:

```

Task Name	Start Time
restore control file	October 18, 2019 5:55:49 AM EDT
move spfile to right location	October 18, 2019 5:56:08 AM EDT
register DB with clusterware	October 18, 2019 5:56:13 AM EDT
reset db parameters	October 18, 2019 5:57:05 AM EDT
Running DataPatch	October 18, 2019 5:57:36 AM EDT

(Continued)

End Time	Status
October 18, 2019 5:56:08 AM EDT	Success
October 18, 2019 5:56:13 AM EDT	Success
October 18, 2019 5:57:05 AM EDT	Success
October 18, 2019 5:57:36 AM EDT	Success
October 18, 2019 5:57:49 AM EDT	Success

## odacli upgrade-database

Use the `odacli upgrade-database` command to upgrade a database from a supported release.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To upgrade an Oracle Database:

```
odacli upgrade-database -i Comma separated list of database ids -from
source dbhome id -to destination dbhome id [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--databaseids, -i</code>	(Optional) Defines the Database IDs to upgrade. You can use a comma separated list of database IDs.
<code>--destDbHomeId, -to</code>	The DB HOME ID of the destination database home.
<code>--sourceDbHomeId, -from</code>	The DB HOME ID of the source database home.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

## Usage Notes

You have the following options for defining the databases to upgrade:

- When you define a single database ID, only the database of the source database home is upgraded.
- When you define more than one database ID, only those databases of the source database home are upgraded.
- When you do not define a database ID, all of the databases under the source database home are upgraded.

You can upgrade databases of the following releases:

- Oracle Database 12.2 to 18c
- Oracle Database 12.1 to 18c
- Oracle Database 11c to 18c
- Oracle Database 12.1 to 12.2
- Oracle Database 11c to 12.2
- Oracle Database 11c to 12.1

### Example 12-83 Upgrading an Oracle Database

In this example, a single database is upgraded. Use the command `odacli list-databases` to display the database ID, then use the command `odacli upgrade-databases` to upgrade the 11.2.0.4 database. After the upgrade is complete, you can run the command `odacli list-databases` again to verify the upgrade.

```
# odacli list-databases
```

ID	DB Name	DB Version	CDB
ad6c7326-e460-411e-94df-230dedbef743	rdb121a	11.2.0.4	true
fb4d02f3-2413-47ca-8584-a768e23ec2e7	ee12db	12.1.0.2	false

(Continued)

Class	Shape	Storage	Status
OLTP	odbl	ACFS	Configured
IMDB	odbl	ASM	Configured

```
# odacli upgrade-database -i ad6c7326-e460-411e-94df-230dedbef743 -from fa4321f5-0543-477d-bb54-a429dcc8ee8d -to d752df28-ecdd-4af4-9454-38085ea17f8b
```

```
{
  "jobId" : "1bbe8boe-acb0-4296--9c8b-473b69da0c18",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : "October 24, 2017 03:54:03 AM EDT",
  "description" : "Database service upgrade with db ids: [ad6c7326-
e460-411e-94df-230dedbef743]",
  "updatedAtTime" : "October 24, 2017 03:54:03 AM EDT"
}
```

```
# odacli list-databases
```

ID	DB Name	DB Version	CDB
ad6c7326-e460-411e-94df-230dedbef743	rdb121a	12.1.0.2	true

```
fb4d02f3-2413-47ca-8584-a768e23ec2e7 ee12db 12.1.0.2 false
```

(Continued)

Class	Shape	Storage	Status
OLTP	odbl	ACFS	Configured
IMDB	odbl	ASM	Configured

## odacli delete-database

Use the `odacli delete-database` command to delete a database.

### File Path

```
/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To delete a database:

```
odacli delete-database -i dbid [-h] [-j] [-fd]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--dbid, -i</code>	Identifies the database home identifier (ID) to display. Use the <code>odacli list-databases</code> command to obtain the <code>--dbid</code> .
<code>--force, -fd</code>	(Optional) Forces the delete operation.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.

### Usage

#### Note:

The `delete-database` command deletes the database, the file system, and the underlying `advm` volumes assigned to the database. For example, deleting a database named `hrdb` also deletes the file system `/u02/app/oracle/oradata/hrdb`. Do not keep any other files on this database file location.

### Example 12-84 Deleting a Database Named `hrmsdb`

In this example we want to delete a database named `hrmsdb`. Before we can delete the database, we need to know the database home identifier (`dbid`). This example shows

how to run the `odacli list-databases` command to list the databases and their associated *dbid*, then how to delete database `hrmsdb`.

```
# odacli list-databases

ID                               DB Name  DB Version  CDB
Class
-----
-----
a3f4a6c0-a0c9-4c79-bad7-898afcf9de46  hrmsdb  12.1.0.2    true  OLTP
7e28bf52-1a09-49fd-9391-841838d2c42f  crmdb   12.1.0.2    false OLTP

(continued)
Shape      Storage  Status
-----
odbl       ACFS     Configured
odbl       ACFS     Configured

# odacli delete-database -i a3f4a6c0-a0c9-4c79-bad7-898afcf9de46
```

## odacli DBHome Commands

Use the `odacli DBHome` commands to manage database Home operations.

- [odacli list-dbhomes](#)  
Use the `odacli list-dbhomes` command to display a list of Oracle Home directories.
- [odacli describe-dbhome](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-dbhome` command to display Oracle Database Home details.
- [odacli create-dbhome](#)  
Use the `odacli create-dbhome` command to create an Oracle Database Home.
- [odacli delete-dbhome](#)  
Use the `odacli delete-dbhome` command to delete database home that is not associated with a database.

### odacli list-dbhomes

Use the `odacli list-dbhomes` command to display a list of Oracle Home directories.

#### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

#### Syntax

To display a list of Oracle Home directories:

```
odacli list-dbhomes [-h] [-j]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
--help,-h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--json,-j	(Optional) Displays JSON output.

**Example 12-85 Displaying a List of Oracle Home Directories**

Run the following command to display a list of Oracle Home directories:

```
# odacli list-dbhomes
```

```

ID                                     Name                                     DB Version
-----
b727bf80-c99e-4846-ac1f-28a81a725df6 OraDB12102_home1 12.1.0.2

(continued)
Home Location
-----
/u01/app/orauser/product/12.1.0.2/dbhome_1

```

## odacli describe-dbhome

Use the `odacli describe-dbhome` command to display Oracle Database Home details.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

To display details about Oracle Database Home:

```
odacli describe-dbhome -i dbhomeid [-h] [-j] [-v]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
-i <i>dbhomeid</i>	Identifies the database home ID. Use the <code>odacli list-dbhomes</code> command to get the <i>dbhomeid</i> .
--help,-h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--json,-j	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
-v <i>dbversion</i>	(Optional) Identifies the Database Home Version. Use the <code>odacli list-dbhomes -v</code> command to get the <i>dbversion</i> .

**Example 12-86 Displaying Oracle Database Home Details**

The following output is an example of using the display Oracle Database Home details command:

```
# odacli describe-dbhome -i b727bf80-c99e-4846-ac1f-28a81a725df6

DB Home details
-----
                ID: b727bf80-c99e-4846-ac1f-28a81a725df6
                Name: OraDB12102_home1
                Version: 12.1.0.2
Home Location: /u01/app/orauser/product/12.1.0.2/dbhome_1
                Created: Jun 2, 2016 10:19:23 AM
```

## odacli create-dbhome

Use the `odacli create-dbhome` command to create an Oracle Database Home.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

To create an Oracle Database Home:

```
odacli create-dbhome -v version [-j] [-h]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>-v <i>version number</i></code>	Defines the database bundle patch number.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

**Usage Notes**

For the version number, you can specify the database version, such as 18.7.0.0, 18.5.0.0, 12.2.0.1, 12.1.0.2 or 11.2.0.4, or you can use a 5 digit format to specify a specific patch bundle version. For example, 19.5.0.0.191015. If you use the database version without specifying the bundle patch number, then the latest bundle patch is used.

 **Note:**

Oracle Database 11.2.0.4.160419 is not supported. Attempts to create an Oracle Database 11.2 against an 11.2.0.4.160419 database home will fail.



**Example 12-87 Creating an Oracle Database Home**

The following example creates an Oracle Database Home version 19.5.0.0.191015.

```
# odacli create-dbhome -v 19.5.0.0.191015
```

## odacli delete-dbhome

Use the `odacli delete-dbhome` command to delete database home that is not associated with a database.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

```
odacli delete-dbhome -i [-h]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>--id, -i</code>	Identifies the database home using a database identifier (ID).
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

**Usage Notes**

- Use the `odacli list-dbhomes` command to locate the identifier.
- To delete, or uninstall, a database home (dbhome), there must not be any associated databases in the dbhome.
- Use the `odacli delete-database` command to delete an existing database.

**Example 12-88 Deleting an Empty Database Home**

```
# odacli delete-dbhome -i 0ce547ca-3df2-4178-a7e6-eeefa613aeab4
```

## odacli Database Storage Commands

Use the Database Storage commands to list, describe, create, and delete Oracle database storage.

- [odacli list-dbstorages](#)  
Use the `odacli list-dbstorages` command to display a list of all of the database storage configured in the appliance.
- [odacli describe-dbstorage](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-dbstorage` command to display storage configuration details.

- [odacli create-dbstorage](#)  
Use the `odacli create-dbstorage` command to create the file system for database migrations.
- [odacli delete-dbstorage](#)  
Use the `odacli delete-dbstorage` command to delete database storage that is not associated with a database.
- [odacli describe-dgstorage](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-dgstorages` command to display the disk group information.
- [odacli list-dgstorages](#)  
Use the `odacli list-dgstorages` command to display the disk group information.

## odacli list-dbstorages

Use the `odacli list-dbstorages` command to display a list of all of the database storage configured in the appliance.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli`

### Syntax

```
# odacli list-dbstorages [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Usage Notes

This command displays a list of all of the filesystems that are configured with the `create-database` command and the `create-dbstorage` command.

### Example 12-89 Displaying a List of all Database Storage

```
# odacli list-dbstorages
```

ID Type	DBUnique	Name	Status
9fe39332-cc1a-4b4b-8393-165524a6ef6b	Acfs	rdb121a	Configured
4f2a1b59-ca66-4d80-951c-425ab7b0acae	Asm	ee12db	Configured
0266edac-c729-4539-861f-3f3d543be9e4	Acfs	db12SE	Configured

## odacli describe-dbstorage

Use the `odacli describe-dbstorage` command to display storage configuration details.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli describe-dbstorage -i [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--id, -i</code>	Identifies the database storage.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Usage Notes

- Use the `odacli list-dbstorages` command to get the database storage identifier (ID).
- The DATA Location corresponds to the `init.ora` parameter `db_create_file_dest`.
- RECO Location corresponds to the `init.ora` parameter `db_recovery_file_dest`.
- REDO Location corresponds to the `init.ora` parameter `db_create_online_log_dest_1`.

### Example 12-90 Displaying Database Oracle ACFS Storage Details

The following example displays Oracle ASM Cluster file system (ACFS) storage details:

```
# odacli describe-dbstorage -i 9fe39332-cc1a-4b4b-8393-165524a6ef6b

DBStorage details
-----
ID: 9fe39332-cc1a-4b4b-8393-165524a6ef6b
DB Name: rdb121a
DBUnique Name: rdb121a
DB Resource ID: ad6c7326-e460-411e-94df-230dedbef743
Storage Type: Acfs
DATA Location: /u02/app/oracle/oradata/rdb121a
RECO Location: /u03/app/oracle/fast_recovery_area/
REDO Location: /u03/app/oracle/redo/
State: ResourceState(status=Configured)
```

Created: July 22, 2016 12:07:12 PM SGT  
 UpdatedTime: July 22, 2016 12:26:39 PM SGT

### Example 12-91 Displaying Database Oracle ASM Storage Details

The following example displays Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) storage details:

```
# odacli describe-dbstorage -i 4f2a1b59-ca66-4d80-951c-425ab7b0acae

DBStorage details
-----
ID: 4f2a1b59-ca66-4d80-951c-425ab7b0acae
DB Name: ee12db
DBUnique Name: ee12db
DB Resource ID: fb4d02f3-2413-47ca-8584-a768e23ec2e7
Storage Type: Asm
DATA Location: DATA
RECO Location: RECO
REDO Location: RECO
State: ResourceState(status=Configured)
Created: July 22, 2016 1:13:51 PM SGT
UpdatedTime: July 22, 2016 1:13:52 PM SGT
```

## odacli create-dbstorage

Use the `odacli create-dbstorage` command to create the file system for database migrations.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli`

### Syntax

```
odacli create-dbstorage -n dbname -s dataSize -u databaseUniqueName -r
[ASM|ACFS] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--dbname, -n</code>	Defines the name of the database.
<code>--dataSize, -s</code>	(Optional) Defines the size, in gigabytes (GB), of the filesystem for storing database files and temp files. The default is: 100 GB The minimum size is 10 GB. When entering the size, do not include GB. For example, for 50 GB, use 50.

Parameter	Description
<code>--databaseUniqueName, -u</code>	(Optional) Defines a unique name for the database. Specify only if the database unique name is different than the database name. The command creates the following mount point: <code>/u02/app/oracle/oradata/db unique name</code>
<code>--dbstorage, -r [ASM ACFS]</code>	(Optional) Defines the type of database storage, either ASM or ACFS. When you select ASM, the command only creates the supporting directory structure for storing non-database files. The default is: ASM
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Usage Notes

- The `odacli create-dbstorage` command registers the storage metadata with the Appliance Manager.
- Oracle Database is supported on both Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) and Oracle ASM Cluster file system (ACFS). The default is Oracle ASM.
- When you create ACFS database storage, the command creates a separate ACFS file system and creates the directory structure for other database files, such as archives and online logs.
- When you create ASM database storage, the command only creates the corresponding directories for non-database files.

### Example 12-92 Creating Database Storage

The following statement creates 50 GB ACFS database storage for the APPSDB database.

```
# odacli create-dbstorage -n APPSDB -s 50 -r ACFS
{
  "jobId" : "fc6bf8fd-60c2-44f3-b8b7-efd0e9a2149f",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : "August 09, 2016 06:19:35 AM WSST",
  "description" : "Database storage service creation with db name:
APPSDB",
  "updatedAt" : "August 09, 2016 06:19:35 AM WSST"
}
```

## odacli delete-dbstorage

Use the `odacli delete-dbstorage` command to delete database storage that is not associated with a database.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli delete-dbstorage -i [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--id, -i</code>	Identifies the database storage using a database identifier (ID).
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Usage Notes

- You can only use the `delete-dbstorage` when the storage is not associated with any databases.
- Use the `delete-database` command to delete an existing database.
- Use the `list-dbstorages` command to locate the identifier.

### Example 12-93 Deleting Empty Database Storage

```
# odacli delete-dbstorage -i 9fe39332-ccl1a-4b4b-8393-165524a6ef6b
```

## odacli describe-dgstorage

Use the `odacli describe-dgstorages` command to display the disk group information.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli describe-dgstorage -d diskgroup -h
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
--diskgroup, -d	Specifies the disk group for which information is displayed.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

## Usage Notes

This command displays the storage information for all the databases backed by a disk group, for each disk group present in the system.

### Example 12-94 Displaying Disk Group Storage

```
# odacli list-dgstorages -r redundancy
Diskgroup storage details

-----
-----

Diskgroup: DATA

          Redundancy: extern|normal|high|flex

          Physical Free Space: wGB

          Physical Total Space: xGB

          Database Unique Name: rdbx

          Location: /u02/app/test/test1/rdbx

          Used Space: dGB (acfsutil.total -
acfsutil.freespace)

          Free Space: dGB (acfsutil.freespace)

          Database Unique Name: rdby

          Location: +DATA/rdby

          Used Space: zGB (v$asm_file.bytes)

          Free Space: xGB (PhyFree/redundancy)

          Physical Space:
vGB(v$asm_diskgroup.total_mb)

          Physical Used : wGB (v$asm_file.space)
```

```

Physical Free :
uGB(v$asm_diskgroup.free_mb)

Physical Reserved : uGB(Lookup Table)

Diskgroup: RECO

Redundancy: normal|high|flex

Physical Free Space: wGB

Physical Total Space: xGB

Database Unique Name: rdbx

Location: /u02/app/test/
fast_recovery_area

Used Space: dGB (acfsutil.total -
acfsutil.freespace)

Free Space: dGB (acfsutil.freespace)

Database Unique Name: rdby

Location: +DATA/rdby

Used Space: zGB (v$asm_file.bytes)

Free Space: xGB (PhyFree/redundancy)

Physical Space:
vGB(v$asm_diskgroup.total_mb)

Physical Used : wGB (v$asm_file.space)

Physical Free :
uGB(v$asm_diskgroup.free_mb)

Physical Reserved : uGB(Lookup Table)

```

## odacli list-dgstorages

Use the `odacli list-dgstorages` command to display the disk group information.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```



## Syntax

```
odacli list-dgstorages -r redundancy -h
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
--redundancy, -r	Specifies the disk group redundancy.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

## Usage Notes

- The command displays the storage-related information for all the disk groups present in the system.
- The redundancy option is valid only for FLEX disk groups. For all disk groups that are not FLEX, logical free space is calculated using the redundancy obtained from v\$asm\_diskgroup rather than the CLI option.
- Redundancy option can take the values EXTERN | NORMAL | HIGH. Use any of these options to specify the redundancy for FLEX disk groups.
- In the example below, Physical Total Space is the total space in the disk group. (V\$ASM\_DISKGROUP.total\_mb) Physical Reserved Space is the reserved space required to handle disk failures. Physical Free Space is the free space in the disk group. (V\$ASM\_DISKGROUP.free\_mb) Logical Free Space is the logical free space in the diskgroup. (V\$ASM\_DISKGROUP.free\_mb / redundancy)

This command displays the storage information for all the databases backed by a disk group, for each disk group present in the system.

### Example 12-95 Displaying Disk Group Storage

```
# odacli list-dgstorages -r redundancy
Diskgroup Redundancy Physical Total Space Physical Reserved Space
Physical Free Space Logical Free
Space
-----
DATA          FLEX          xGB
yGB
          zGB          uGB

REDO          HIGH          xGB
yGB
          zGB          uGB

RECO          NORMAL        xGB
yGB
          zGB          uGB
```

## odacli Job Commands

Use the `odacli list-jobs` and `odacli describe-job` commands to display job details.

- [odacli list-jobs](#)  
Use the `odacli list-jobs` command to display a list of jobs, including the job IDs, status, and the job created date and time stamp.
- [odacli describe-job](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-job` command to display details about a specific job, including the job ID, status, tasks, and the job created date and time stamp.
- [odacli list-scheduled-executions](#)

### odacli list-jobs

Use the `odacli list-jobs` command to display a list of jobs, including the job IDs, status, and the job created date and time stamp.

#### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

#### Syntax

To list jobs and view job details and status:

```
odacli list-jobs [-j] [-h] [-o] [-f] [-t] [-hd] [-tl] [-k] [-s]
```

#### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--for, -o</code>	(Optional) Describes a job created on a specific date. In the format YYYY-MM-DD, such as 2018-01-01 . Example: <pre># odacli list-jobs -o 2018-08-09</pre>

---

Parameter	Description
<code>--from, -f</code>	<p>(Optional) Describes a job created since a specific date. In the format YYYY-MM-DD or YYYY-MM-DD HH:mm:ss, such as 2018-01-01 or 2018-01-01 01:00:00.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre># odacli list-jobs -f 2018-08-27 # odacli list-jobs -f "2018-08-27 03:00:00"</pre>
<code>--head, -hd</code>	<p>(Optional) Describes the maximum number of older jobs to be displayed, values can be 1 to 200.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>odacli list-jobs -hd 10</pre>
<code>--to, -t</code>	<p>(Optional) Describes a job created ahead of a specific date. In the format YYYY-MM-DD or YYYY-MM-DD HH:mm:ss, such as 2018-01-01 or 2018-01-01 01:00:00.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre># odacli list-jobs -t 2018-08-07</pre>
<code>--tail, -tl</code>	<p>(Optional) Describes the maximum number of latest jobs to be displayed, values can be 1 to 200.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre># odacli list-jobs -tl 10</pre>
<code>--keyword, -k</code>	<p>(Optional) Specifies the keyword that the job description contains.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre># odacli list-jobs -k OraDB</pre>
<code>--status, -s</code>	<p>(Optional) Specifies the status of the job, such as Created, Scheduled, Running, Failure, Success, InternalError.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre># odacli list-jobs -s Failure</pre>

---

**Example 12-96 Displaying a List of Jobs**

To display a list of jobs:

```
# odacli list-jobs

ID                               Description                               Created
-----
a6084067-72a1-4625-bea7-efd Provisioning service creation Jun 2, 2018
10:19:23 AM
```

(Continued)

Status

-----

Success

**Example 12-97 Displaying Specified Number of Older Jobs**

To display a specified number of older jobs:

```
# odacli list-jobs -hd 5
ID Description Created Status
---
643c6186-a667-43d7-847f-d756a96fa072 Create detailed Backup Report
August 5, 2018 12:36:26 AM UTC Success
f29cb82c-6150-487d-aaff-52d65f6ab972 Create recovery-pitr : time
'08/05/2018 07:16:12'
for db : igIyoz August 5, 2018 1:01:39 AM UTC Success
cfe19337-ab2f-4ef3-85b5-24601ba31be2 Create detailed Backup Report
August 5, 2018 1:17:46 AM UTC Success
3749b5e2-240e-4df5-b3c1-32d345243b25 Create detailed Backup Report
August 5, 2018 2:01:07 AM UTC Success
64828852-bb16-4f06-aca9-4bdf9fe7b6f2 Create regular-5 Backup with TAG-
id5UNjBZ8HN2FYL
for Db:igIyoz August 5, 2018 2:14:19 AM UTC Success
```

**Example 12-98 Displaying Jobs in a Date Range**

To display jobs created within a time frame:

```
# ./odacli list-jobs -f 2018-08-07 -t 2018-08-08
ID Description Created Status
---
1fc5ef97-a9db-49b2-9664-7c551bd005f4 Authentication key update for
test_user August 7, 2018 12:56:58 AM UTC Success
e24f86cf-bb2e-4ebe-84e0-da5cedb27ad4 Provisioning service creation August
7, 2018 1:00:54 AM UTC Success
7f67efd6-cce5-47b4-8dc4-fdb732491f99 CPU cores service update August 7,
2018 1:41:05 AM UTC Success
0ae9a312-bac8-43be-8a64-5a12c24c2a02 SSH keys update August 7, 2018
1:42:59 AM UTC Success
af41fdc1-87ff-46cd-bc41-26615e115ae7 SSH key delete August 7, 2018 1:44:56
AM UTC Success
79e4cbb0-b474-48ab-9e04-d3d602bc0ed2 DcsCli patching August 7, 2018
```

```
1:50:18 AM UTC Success
edd55e7d-f81f-4a10-942d-1121aef0bff3 DcsCli patching August 7, 2018
1:50:32 AM UTC Success
acc22c60-3476-4566-8faa-4d36b116eded create backup
config:aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa August 7, 2018 2:01:46 AM UTC Success
d89efedf-9110-429a-a3b2-ccd6a53f8564 Database Home OraDB12201_home2
creation with version :12.2.0.1 August 7, 2018 2:36:05 AM UTC Success
2a5532ae-41fa-47c2-bc90-010a5f26d6b2 Database service creation with db
name: myl22 August 7, 2018 3:52:38 AM UTC Success
c4e533e9-c596-478f-92db-2f11f1384075 Discover Components : all August 7,
2018 4:07:09 AM UTC Success
149e89b5-27d3-4c7c-9c03-f029ca3dd495 Discover Components : all August 7,
2018 4:08:45 AM UTC Success
21d4c37b-49ad-48dd-ald-1f25d9288312 Database Home OraDB11204_home1
creation with version :11.2.0.4 August 7, 2018 4:19:32 AM UTC Success
b61dbbca-edc1-4a4a-9db2-82b0bdc64e6 Database service deletion with db
name: myTestDb with id : 6400c81d-5837-480c-b4a1-7c01591ee144 August 7,
2018 4:24:50 AM UTC Success
d4a104df-5796-4e37-9173-82f0e263d642 create backup config:bkfgd August 7,
2018 4:28:54 AM UTC Success
a121d40b-f33b-47a4-8fc6-4e3b84173f44 Database service creation with db
name: myl12 August 7, 2018 6:51:13 PM UTC Success
42dd661f-9ba0-4877-ace9-39d3f212c071 Discover Components : all August 7,
2018 7:12:56 PM UTC Success
2f648f5a-c9c5-42ec-adb0-98cf6497c89e Discover System Components : system
August 8, 2018 3:28:12 AM UTC Success
a5755f43-509d-4d4c-b7ef-9f99660c4de7 DB Home Patching: Home Id is
97df26b3-42f2-4189-805b-82d1b38737d0 August 8, 2018 3:52:08 AM UTC Success
79b0e697-065f-4630-a524-8d072a4e139a Database Home OraDB12102_home1
creation with version :12.1.0.2 August 8, 2018 4:34:30 AM UTC Success
112b75bc-3512-4c28-a479-3e0317eb0dc4 Database service creation with db
name: mynew121 August 8, 2018 8:02:51 AM UTC Failure
09f56fb0-1e91-4b02-a9b8-5add11a8da32 Database service creation with db
name: myl21a August 8, 2018 9:13:01 AM UTC Success
5633ded9-07ea-4bf9-9533-31eb65789fe7 Database service deletion with db
name: mynew121 with id : 24be4362-16c8-476f-903a-f6f2ef59f5e4 August 8,
2018 9:24:31 AM UTC Success
458dlc45-02dc-456c-ae88-5da613faaa66 Database service creation with db
name: mynew121 August 8, 2018 9:27:31 AM UTC Success
f178f378-a9d7-4d5c-b6f5-6f62ea4e05bb Database service deletion with db
name: myTestDb with id : ef50387b-0c62-4446-b210-f8d070e2a043 August 8,
2018 9:40:43 AM UTC Success
7fab740f-a711-466a-ba6d-dd5643374c28 Database service deletion with db
name: myTestDb with id : 6632a083-558a-4eb4-8c2b-af0710179980 August 8,
2018 9:41:04 AM UTC Success
3121529d-2b9d-4bbe-bf58-996c2cf46996 Database service creation with db
name: mydss August 8, 2018 9:42:06 AM UTC Success
3d0a9261-19d7-42bb-8b92-00fcc4f8c41e Discover Components : db August 8,
2018 10:17:22 AM UTC Success
```

## odacli describe-job

Use the `odacli describe-job` command to display details about a specific job, including the job ID, status, tasks, and the job created date and time stamp.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To view a specific job, status, and tasks:

```
odacli describe-job -i jobid [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--jobid, -i <i>jobid</i></code>	Identifies the job. To get the job identifier (jobid), run the <code>list-jobs</code> command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-99 Displaying Details for a Job

To display details of a specific job with jobid `02df22c8-c21f-4162-8265-97f7826c243a`:

```
# odacli describe-job -i 02df22c8-c21f-4162-8265-97f7826c243a
```

## odacli list-scheduled-executions

Use the command `odacli list-scheduled-executions` to display a list of jobs that were executed.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli list-scheduled-executions [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

Parameter	Description
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.

### Example 12-100 Displaying a List of Scheduled and Executed Jobs

Display a list of scheduled tasks, the status, and the date and time that the task was executed. In the following example, three (3) scheduled tasks were executed. One task, Schedule ID 04b5750c-0d13-42cf-aba3-85416e8edafb, was executed twice.

```
# odacli list-scheduled-executions

ID                               ScheduledId
JobId
-----
9890508c-ff6d-4307-972f-7962ec390871  04b5750c-0d13-42cf-
aba3-85416e8edafb
10a33e08-695c-4d13-b970-7dc7215f3cdd
7ee1e2aa-80a8-4297-97f7-365b84bcce4d
4a9e9796-4bed-4df7-af1e-de49362dda97  04b5750c-0d13-42cf-aba3-85416e8edafb

(Continued)
Status   Executed Time
-----
Executed February 4, 2018 12:00:00 AM UTC
Executed February 4, 2018 12:00:00 AM UTC
Executed February 5, 2018 12:00:00 AM UTC
```

To learn more about a scheduled backup, run the command `odacli list-schedules`. The output displays the ID, name, description, and schedule for each task.

```
# odacli list-schedules

ID                               Name
Description
-----
d136cc72-4a80-4ab8-9f1e-120b995b2794  metastore maintenance
internal metastore maintenance
04b5750c-0d13-42cf-aba3-85416e8edafb  AgentState metastore cleanup
internal agentstateentry metastore maintenance
7ee1e2aa-80a8-4297-97f7-365b84bcce4d  backupreport maintenance
backup reports deletion

(Continued)
CronExpression                   Disabled
-----
0 0 0 1/1 * ? *                 true
0 0 0 1/1 * ? *                 false
0 0 0 1/3 * ? *                 false
```

## Log Commands

Use the `odacli log` commands to specify the options to collect and delete logs.

- [odaadmcli manage diagcollect](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli manage diagcollect` command to collect diagnostic logs for Oracle Database Appliance components.
- [odacli list-logspaceusage](#)  
Use the `odacli list-logspaceusage` command to display the log file usage.
- [odacli create-logcleanjob](#)  
Use the `odacli create-logcleanjob` command to create a job to purge log files for a specified time period.
- [odacli list-logcleanjobs](#)  
Use the `odacli list-logcleanjobs` command to list the jobs to purge log files.
- [odacli describe-logcleanjob](#)  
Use the `odacli describe-logcleanjob` command to describe a log cleanup job.
- [odacli create-auto-logclean-policy](#)  
Use the `odacli create-auto-logclean-policy` command to create a policy for a job to automatically purge log files for a specified time period when certain criteria are met.
- [odacli list-auto-logclean-policy](#)  
Use the `odacli list-auto-logclean-policy` command to list the jobs to purge log files.

## odaadmcli manage diagcollect

Use the `odaadmcli manage diagcollect` command to collect diagnostic logs for Oracle Database Appliance components.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli`

### Syntax

To collect diagnostic logs for components:

```
odaadmcli manage diagcollect [-h] [--dataMask] [--dataSanitize] [--fromTime] [--toTime] [--Components]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--dataMask</code>	(Optional) Masks sensitive data. The default is No.
<code>--dataSanitize</code>	(Optional) Sanitizes (redacts) sensitive data. The default is No.



Parameter	Description
<code>--fromTime</code>	(Optional) Specifies the time from when you want to collect data. The timestamp formats can be of the type: <code>mon/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss</code> , or <code>yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss</code> , or <code>yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss</code> , or <code>yyyy-mm-dd</code> .
<code>--toTime</code>	(Optional) Specifies the time till when you want to collect data. The timestamp formats can be of the type: <code>mon/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss</code> , or <code>yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss</code> , or <code>yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss</code> , or <code>yyyy-mm-dd</code> .
<code>--Components</code>	(Optional) Specifies the comma-separated list of components for which you want to collect data. The supported values are:  <code>all, ips, oda, odalite, dcs, odabackup, odapatching, odadataguard, odaprovisioning, odaconfig, odasystem, odastorage, database, asm, crsclient, dbclient, dbwlm, tns, rhp, procinfo, afd, crs, cha, wls, emagent, oms, ocm, emplugins, em, acfs, install, cfgtools, os, ashhtml, ashtext, awrhtml, awrtext</code>
<code>--verbose</code>	Displays detailed message.

### Usage Notes

The following types of sensitive information can be redacted using the `--dataMask` or the `--dataSanitize` option:

- Host names
- IP addresses
- Database names
- Tablespace names
- Service names
- Ports
- Operating System user names

For example, when the `--dataMask` option is used, all instances of a sensitive name such as a database name called "payrolldb" are replaced with "\*\*\*\*\*" in the TFA collection.

For example, when the `--dataSanitize` option is used, all instances of a sensitive name such as a database name called "payrolldb" are replaced with another string, such as "oCjIN7F8P", in the TFA collection.

#### Example 12-101 Masking Sensitive Data in Log Collection

```
# /opt/oracle/oak/bin/odaadmcli manage diagcollect --dataMask
DataMask is set as true
TFACTL command is: /opt/oracle/tfa/tfa_home/bin/tfactl
```

```
Data mask is set.
Collect data within last 12 hours as default
Please wait for several minutes for the collection to complete.
```

## odacli list-logspaceusage

Use the `odacli list-logspaceusage` command to display the log file usage.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To list jobs and view job details and status:

```
odacli list-logspaceusage [-c] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
--components, -c	Describes the list of components delimited by comma. The values can be <code>gi   database   dcs</code> . For example, <code>gi,dcs</code> .
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-102 Displaying a List of Logs

To display log file space usage for a list of components:

```
odacli list-logspaceusage
Timestamp: July 25, 2018 7:31:39 PM UTC

-----

Component      Size(MB)  Partition                               LogUsagePercentage
PartitionFreePercentage

-----

dcs      477.00      /dev/mapper/VolGroupSys-LogVolOpt 0.79
81.00

gi      1863.68      /dev/mapper/VolGroupSys-LogVolU01 1.85
86.00
```

## odacli create-logcleanjob

Use the `odacli create-logcleanjob` command to create a job to purge log files for a specified time period.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To list jobs and view job details and status:

```
odacli create-logcleanjob [-h] [-c] [-o] [-u]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--components, -c</code>	(Optional) Specifies the list of components, separated by comma. The values are <code>gi   database   dcs</code> For example, <code>gi, dcs</code> .
<code>--olderthan, -o</code>	(Optional) Cleans logs older than specified time interval. Default is 30 if it is not specified.
<code>--unit, -u</code>	(Optional) Unit for the <code>--olderthan</code> parameter. Default is <code>Day</code> if it is not specified.

### Example 12-103 Creating Jobs to Purge Logs

To create jobs to purge logs:

```
# odacli create-logcleanjob
```

```
Job details
```

```
-----
```

```
ID: e03d90b5-41dd-45e0-8b7a-1480d6d7f86f
```

```
Description: log file cleanup
```

```
Status: Created
```

```
Created: July 25, 2018 8:06:56 PM UTC
```

```
Message:
```

```
Task Name Start Time End Time Status
```

```
-----
-----
# ./odacli describe-job -i e03d90b5-41dd-45e0-8b7a-1480d6d7f86f
```

```
Job details
```

```
-----
ID: e03d90b5-41dd-45e0-8b7a-1480d6d7f86f
```

```
Description: log file cleanup
```

```
Status: Success
```

```
Created: July 25, 2018 8:06:56 PM UTC
```

```
Message:
```

```
Task Name      Start Time      End Time      Status
-----
Clean TFA logs  July 25, 2018 8:06:56 PM UTC July 25, 2018 8:06:59 PM
UTC Success

Clean DCS logs  July 25, 2018 8:06:56 PM UTC July 25, 2018 8:06:56 PM
UTC Success
```

## odacli list-logcleanjobs

Use the `odacli list-logcleanjobs` command to list the jobs to purge log files.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To list jobs and view job details and status:

```
odacli list-logcleanjobs [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

**Example 12-104 Listing Jobs to Purge Logs**

To list jobs to purge logs:

```
# odacli list-logcleanjobs
JobId    Files Deleted    Size Freed    Component    Top Path    TimeStamp
-----
-----a8ef8315-02e8-4979-
ab1f-30251818c6eb 0    0 bytes gi    /u01/app/12.2.0.1/grid July 25, 2018
7:45:10 PM UTC

e03d90b5-41dd-45e0-8b7a-1480d6d7f86f 0 0 bytes gi    /u01/app/12.2.0.1/
grid July 25, 2018 8:06:59 PM UTC

e03d90b5-41dd-45e0-8b7a-1480d6d7f86f 0 0 bytes dcs    /opt/oracle/dcs/log
July 25, 2018 8:06:56 PM UTC
-----
```

## odacli describe-logcleanjob

Use the `odacli describe-logcleanjob` command to describe a log cleanup job.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

**Syntax**

To list jobs and view job details and status:

```
odacli describe-logcleanjob [-h]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--jobid, -i</code>	Displays the summary of the log cleanup with the specified job ID.

**Example 12-105 Displaying Log Cleanup Jobs**

To display log cleanup jobs:

```
# odacli describe-logcleanjob -i e03d90b5-41dd-45e0-8b7a-1480d6d7f86f
JobId    Files Deleted    Size Freed    Component    Top Path    TimeStamp
-----
-----
e03d90b5-41dd-45e0-8b7a-1480d6d7f86f 0 0 bytes dcs    /opt/oracle/dcs/log
```

July 25, 2018 8:06:56 PM UTC

e03d90b5-41dd-45e0-8b7a-1480d6d7f86f 0 0 bytes gi /u01/app/12.2.0.1/grid  
July 25, 2018 8:06:59 PM UTC

## odacli create-auto-logclean-policy

Use the `odacli create-auto-logclean-policy` command to create a policy for a job to automatically purge log files for a specified time period when certain criteria are met.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli`

### Syntax

To list jobs and view job details and status:

```
odacli create-auto-logclean-policy [-h] [-c] [-o] [-u] [-uMB] [-f] [-uPer]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--components, -c</code>	(Optional) Specifies the list of components, separated by comma. The values are <code>gi   database   dcs</code> . For example, <code>gi   dcs</code> .
<code>--olderthan, -o</code>	(Optional) Cleans logs older than specified time interval. Default is 30 if it is not specified.
<code>--olderThanUnit, -u</code>	(Optional) Unit for the <code>--olderthan</code> parameter. Default is <code>Day</code> if it is not specified.
<code>--freeSpaceBelowPercentage, -f</code>	Starts purge when free disk space is below the specified number of percentage of the total partition size. Valid range is 20-50. Default is 20.
<code>--usageOverMB, -uMB</code>	Starts purge when log usage is over the specified number of MB. Valid range is 10%-50% of partition size.
<code>--usageOverPercentage, -uPer</code>	Starts purge when log usage is over the specified number of percentage of total partition space. Valid range is 10-50.

### Example 12-106 Creating Automatic Jobs to Purge Logs

To create a policy for automatic jobs to purge logs:

```
# odacli create-auto-logclean-policy -c 'dcs' -o 30 -uPer 30
Component UsageOverPercentage freeSpaceBelowPercentage UsageOverMB
```

```

OlderThan  OlderThanUnit
-----
-----
dcs          30          20
0           30          Day

```

## odacli list-auto-logclean-policy

Use the `odacli list-auto-logclean-policy` command to list the jobs to purge log files.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

To list jobs and view job details and status:

```
odacli list-auto-logclean-policy [-h] [-c]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--components, -c</code>	(Optional) Specifies the list of components, separated by comma. The values are <code>gi</code>   <code>database</code>   <code>dcs</code> For example, <code>gi,dcs</code> .

### Example 12-107 Listing Jobs to Purge Logs

To list jobs to purge logs:

```

# odacli list-auto-logclean-policy
Component UsageOverPercentage freeSpaceBelowPercentage UsageOverMB
OlderThan OlderThanUnit
-----
-----
gi          40          20
0           60          Day

database    40          20
0           60          Day

dcs         30          20
0           30          Day

```

# odacli Oracle Auto Service Request Commands

Use the Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR) commands to configure, update, test, and delete Oracle ASR on the system.

- [odacli configure-asr](#)
- [odacli update-asr](#)
- [odacli describe-asr](#)
- [odacli test-asr](#)
- [odacli delete-asr](#)

## odacli configure-asr

Use the `odacli configure-asr` command to configure Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR) after deploying the appliance.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli configure-asr -u username -a asrpassword [-r proxyserver] [-t proxyport]
[-y proxyuser] [-ppwd proxypassword] [-s snmpversion] -i[asrip] -e
[internal|external] [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--asrip, -i</code>	(Optional) Identifies the external Oracle ASR Manager IP address.
<code>--asrpassword, -a</code>	Defines the My Oracle Support password associated with the user name. Use this option to specify the password interactively. When using this option, do not enter the password in the command-line.
<code>--asrtype, -e {internal   external}</code>	Defines the Oracle ASR Configuration Type. The default is internal.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--proxypassword, -ppwd</code>	(Optional) Defines the proxy user password.
<code>--proxyport, -t</code>	(Optional) Defines the proxy server port.
<code>--proxyserver, -r</code>	(Optional) Defines the Proxy Server Address.
<code>--proxyuser, -y</code>	(Optional) Defines the proxy user name needed to authenticate the proxy server.



Parameter	Description
--snmpversion, -s [V3]	(Optional) Defines Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Version 3.
--username, -u	Defines the Oracle ASR user name. The user name is the My Oracle Support user name under which the server is registered.

### Usage Notes

All log files for Oracle ASR are located in the `/var/opt/asrmanager/log/` directory.

To configure an external Oracle ASR Manager, you must define the Oracle ASR Configuration Type as external (`-e external`). For example, `odacli configure-asr -e external -i 198.51.100.1`

### Example 12-108 Configuring Oracle ASR with a Proxy Server

This example configures Oracle ASR for user name `scott.tiger@example.com`. A proxy server, `www-proxy.example.com`, and port 80 are defined.

```
# odacli configure-asr -u john.smithl@example.com -a -t 80 -r www-
proxy.example.com
Asr User password:
```

Job details

```
-----
ID: d99559b6-d98d-4cb7-b44d-8577cab26667
Description: Configure ASR
Status: Created
Created: August 9, 2016 6:12:19 AM WSST
Message:
```

```
Task Name          Start Time          End Time          Status
-----
```

### Example 12-109 Configuring an External Oracle ASR

This example configures Oracle Database Appliance to use an external Oracle ASR instance at IP address 10.20.30.40.

```
# odacli configure-asr --asrip 10.20.30.40 --asrtype External
{
  "jobId" : "ea054a2f-d18d-4253-83bc-b57434e3598e",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : "Please run the script '/tmp/activateExternalAssets.pl' on
the ASRManager host once the current job is successful.",
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : "November 20, 2016 22:12:34 PM EST",
  "description" : "Configure ASR",
  "updatedAtTime" : "November 20, 2016 22:12:34 PM EST"
}
```

When the job completes successfully, run the `/tmp/activateExternalAssets.pl` script on the Oracle ASR Manager host.

## odacli update-asr

Use the `odacli update-asr` command to make changes to Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR) configuration details after deploying the appliance.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli`

### Syntax

```
update-asr -u username -a asrpassword [-r proxyserver] [-t proxyport] [-y proxyuser [-ppwd proxypassword] [-s snmpversion] -i[asrip] -e [internal|external] [-j] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--asrip, -i</code>	(Optional) Identifies the external Oracle ASR Manager IP address.
<code>--asrpassword, -a</code>	Defines the My Oracle Support password associated with the user name. Use this option to specify the password interactively. When using this option, do not enter the password in the command-line.
<code>--asrtype, -e [internal   external]</code>	Defines the Oracle ASR Configuration Type. The default is internal.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output.
<code>--proxypassword, -ppwd</code>	(Optional) Defines the proxy user password.
<code>--proxyport, -t</code>	(Optional) Defines the proxy server port.
<code>--proxyserver, -r</code>	(Optional) Defines the Proxy Server Address.
<code>--proxyuser, -y</code>	(Optional) Defines the proxy user name needed to authenticate the proxy server.
<code>--snmpversion, -s [v3]</code>	(Optional) Defines Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Version 3.
<code>--username, -u</code>	Defines the Oracle ASR user name. The user name is the My Oracle Support user name under which the server is registered.

### Usage Notes

- Enter the password during Oracle ASR configuration.
- All log files for Oracle ASR are located in the `/var/opt/asrmanager/log/` directory.

- You cannot use the `update-asr` command to change the Oracle ASR type. For example, from internal to external. To change the Oracle ASR type, delete the existing configuration using the `odacli delete-asr` and then re-configure Oracle ASR using the `odacli configure-asr` command.
- To configure an external Oracle ASR Manager, you must define the Oracle ASR Configuration Type as external (`-e external`). For example, `odacli update-asr -e external -i 198.51.100.1`

### Example 12-110 Updating Oracle ASR with a New Proxy Server

This example updates Oracle ASR for user name `scott.tiger@example.com`. The password is not defined in the command-line. You are prompted to enter the password during configuration. The proxy server is updated to `www-proxy2.example.com`.

```
# odacli update-asr -u scott.tiger@example.com --asrpassword --proxyserver
www-proxy2.example.com --proxyport 80
Asr User password:
```

Job details

```
-----
ID: 79cb2baa-1644-45c5-a004-a303e3111807
Description: Update ASR
Status: Created
Updated: July 15, 2016 9:53:54 AM PST
Message:
```

Task Name	Start Time	End Time	Status
-----			

## odacli describe-asr

Use the `odacli describe-asr` command to display Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR) configuration details.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli`

### Syntax

```
describe-asr [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-111 Displaying Oracle ASR Details

```
# odacli describe-asr

ASR details
```

```

-----
ID: e841d74a-687b-4e87-9548-1baa2090d48e
Name: UserName: scott.tiger@example.com
ProvyServerName: www-proxy.example.com
ProxyPort: 80
ProxyUserName:
SnmpVersion: V3
State: N/A
Created: July 15, 2016 8:53:54 AM PST
Updated: July 15, 2016 8:53:54 AM PST

```

## odacli test-asr

Use the `odacli test-asr` command to test the Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR) configuration.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
# odacli test-asr [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Usage Notes

This command internally invokes the SNMP test trap by invoking `/SP/alertmgmt/rules/1 testrule=true`.

### Example 12-112 Testing the Oracle ASR Configuration

```
# odacli test-asr
```

```
Job details
```

```

-----
ID: ec6783f4-551d-4686-ab1b-22e2d9e59c98
Description: Test ASR
Status: Created
Created: July 25, 2016 9:03:15 AM SGT
Message:

```

```

Task Name          Start Time          End Time
Status
-----
-----

```

## odacli delete-asr

Use the `odacli delete-asr` command to remove the Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR) configuration from the system.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
# odacli delete-asr [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-113 Deleting Oracle ASR From the System

```
# odacli delete-asr
{
  "jobId" : "5d70bd17-ec4a-48da-8196-1364105db99d",
  "status" : "Running",
  "message" : null,
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : 1469409622451,
  "description" : "Delete ASR",
  "updatedAtTime" : 1469409622458
}
```

## odacli OS Commands

Use the `odacli OS` commands to list and update operating system (OS) parameters.

- [odacli list-osconfigurations](#)  
Use the command `odacli list-osconfigurations` to display the current HugePage and memlock values and view suggested values based on the total available space.
- [odacli update-osconfigurations](#)  
Use the command `odacli update-osconfigurations` to update the HugePage and memlock values.

## odacli list-osconfigurations

Use the command `odacli list-osconfigurations` to display the current HugePage and memlock values and view suggested values based on the total available space.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli list-osconfigurations [-h] [-j]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>--json, -j</code>	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.

### Usage Notes

The command displays the configured values for HugePage and memlock from the `/etc/sysctl.conf` and `/etc/security/limits.conf` files. Based on the total available space, suggested values are calculated for the parameters.

### Example 12-114 Displaying a List of Configured and Suggested Memlock and HugePage Configurations

```
# odacli list-osconfigurations
```

Parameter	User	ConfiguredValue	SuggestedValue
Memlock	grid	295971180KB	289034355KB
Memlock	oracle	295971180KB	289034355KB
HugeSpace	default	101430MB	101161MB

## odacli update-osconfigurations

Use the command `odacli update-osconfigurations` to update the HugePage and memlock values.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

## Syntax

```
odacli update-osconfigurations [-h] [-hs] [-j] [-m]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
--hugespace, -hs	(Optional) Updates the HugePage value.
--json, -j	(Optional) Displays JSON output. The default is false.
--memlock, -m	(Optional) Updates the memlock value.

## Usage Notes

The command updates memlock in the `/etc/security/limits.conf` file and HugePage in the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file with the suggested values.

You can update memlock or hugepage. If no option is provided, then both parameters are updated to the suggested values.

### Example 12-115 Updating the HugePage and Memlock Parameters to the Suggested Values

```
odacli update-osconfigurations
{
  "jobId" : "954cf7a5-9cad-451c-8820-3140a716af26",
  "status" : "Created",
  "message" : "Successfully submitted a request to configure OS
parameters.",
  "reports" : [ ],
  "createTimestamp" : "February 06, 2018 00:03:51 AM MST",
  "resourceList" : [ ],
  "description" : "Configuring OS Parameter",
  "updatedAtTime" : "February 06, 2018 00:03:51 AM MST"
}
[root@rwsoda6s002 ~]# odacli describe-job -i
"954cf7a5-9cad-451c-8820-3140a716af26"
Job details
-----
ID: 954cf7a5-9cad-451c-8820-3140a716af26
Description: Configuring OS Parameter
Status: Success
Created: February 6, 2018 12:03:51 AM MST
Message:
Task Name          Start Time          End Time
Status
-----
Setting up memlock. February 6, 2018 12:03:51 AM MST February 6, 2018 12:03:51 AM MST
Success
Setting up HugeSpace February 6, 2018 12:03:51 AM MST February 6, 2018 12:03:51 AM MST
Success
```

# odaadmcli Hardware Monitoring Commands

Use the `hardware monitoring` commands to display hardware configurations.

- [odaadmcli show cooling](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show cooling` command to show cooling details.
- [odaadmcli show env\\_hw](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show env_hw` command to display information about the environment and hardware.
- [odaadmcli show fs](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show fs` command to display filesystem details.
- [odaadmcli show memory](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show memory` command to display memory details.
- [odaadmcli show network](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show network` command to show network details.
- [odaadmcli show power](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show power` command to display power supply details.
- [odaadmcli show processor](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show processor` command to display processor details.
- [odaadmcli show server](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show server` command to display server details.

## odaadmcli show cooling

Use the `odaadmcli show cooling` command to show cooling details.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

To show cooling details:

```
odaadmcli show cooling [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.



## odaadmcli show env\_hw

Use the `odaadmcli show env_hw` command to display information about the environment and hardware.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

To display environment and hardware details:

```
odaadmcli show env_hw [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-116 Displaying Environment and Hardware Details

To display the hardware details, enter the command `odaadmcli show env_hw`. The results show a bare metal Oracle Database Appliance system.

```
# odaadmcli show env_hw  
  
BM ODA_Lite X7-2 Medium
```

## odaadmcli show fs

Use the `odaadmcli show fs` command to display filesystem details.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

To display filesystem details:

```
odaadmcli show fs [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-117 Displaying Filesystem Details

```
# odaadmcli show fs
```

Type	Total Space	Free Space	Total DG Space	Free DG Space
ext3	30237M	7763M	-	-
ext3	484M	416M	-	-
ext3	60475M	38149M	-	-
ext3	100793M	22060M	-	-
acfs	102400M	102158M	4894016M	2418668M
acfs	102400M	100501M	4894016M	2418668M
acfs	102400M	100601M	4894016M	2418668M

(Continued)

Diskgroup	Mount Point
	/
	/boot
	/opt
	/u01
DATA	/u02/app/oracle/oradata/ACFSDB1
DATA	/u02/app/oracle/oradata/ACFSDB2
DATA	/u02/app/oracle/oradata/EE12NCDB

## odaadmcli show memory

Use the `odaadmcli show memory` command to display memory details.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli`

### Syntax

To show memory details:

```
odaadmcli show memory [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-118 Display Memory Details

```
# odaadmcli show memory
```

NAME	HEALTH	HEALTH_DETAILS	PART_NO.	SERIAL_NO.
DIMM_0	OK	-	3A4K40BB1-CRC	00CE01154602EADA96
DIMM_11	OK	-	3A4K40BB1-CRC	00CE01154602EADADA
DIMM_3	OK	-	3A4K40BB1-CRC	00CE01154602EADBC7

```
DIMM_8    OK        -                3A4K40BB1-CRC        00CE01154602EADBA0
```

(Continued)

LOCATION	MANUFACTURER	MEMORY_SIZE	CURR_CLK_SPEED	ECC_Errors
P0/D0	Samsung	32 GB	2400 MHz	0
P0/D1	Samsung	32 GB	2400 MHz	0
P0/D3	Samsung	32 GB	2400 MHz	0
P0/D8	Samsung	32 GB	2400 MHz	0

## odaadmcli show network

Use the `odaadmcli show network` command to show network details.

### File Path

`$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli`

### Syntax

To show network details:

```
odaadmcli show network [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-119 Showing Network Details

```
# odaadmcli show network
NAME                HEALTH HEALTH_DETAILS LOCATION PART_NO MANUFACTURER
MAC_ADDRESS LINK_DETECTED DIE_TEMP

Ethernet_NIC_0      OK        -                NET0      i210      INTEL
00:10:E0:DD:9D:14  no (em1) N/A

Ethernet_NIC_1      OK        -                NET1      X710/X557-AT Intel
3C:FD:FE:78:93:92  no (p2p3) N/A

Ethernet_NIC_2      OK        -                NET2      X710/X557-AT Intel
3C:FD:FE:78:93:91  yes (p2p2) N/A

Ethernet_NIC_3      OK        -                NET3      X710/X557-AT Intel
3C:FD:FE:78:93:90  yes (p2p1) N/A

Ethernet_NIC_4      OK        -                NET4      BCM57414 Broadcom
B0:26:28:3F:D8:B8  yes (p7p2) N/A

Ethernet_NIC_5      OK        -                NET5      X710/X557-AT Intel
3C:FD:FE:78:93:93  no (p2p4) N/A

Ethernet_NIC_6      OK        -                NET6      BCM57414 Broadcom
B0:26:28:3F:D8:B0  yes (p7p1) N/A
```

## odaadmcli show power

Use the `odaadmcli show power` command to display power supply details.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

Run this command on the master node, to display power supply details on Oracle Database Appliance High-Availability (HA) models:

```
odaadmcli show power [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-120 Displaying Power Supply Details

```
# odaadmcli show power
```

NAME	HEALTH	HEALTH_DETAILS	PART_NO.	SERIAL_NO.
Power_Supply_0	OK	-	7079395	476856Z+1514CE056G

(Continued)

LOCATION	INPUT_POWER	OUTPUT_POWER	INLET_TEMP	EXHAUST_TEMP
PS0	Present	112 watts	28.000 degree C	34.938 degree C

## odaadmcli show processor

Use the `odaadmcli show processor` command to display processor details.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

To show processor details:

```
odaadmcli show processor [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

**Example 12-121 Displaying Processor Details**

```
# odaadmcli show processor

NAME          HEALTH HEALTH_DETAILS PART_NO. LOCATION MODEL
CPU_0        OK      -              060F P0 (CPU 0) Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU
E5-2630

(Continued)
MAX_CLK_SPEED TOTAL_CORES  ENABLED_CORES
2.200 GHz      10           10
```

**odaadmcli show server**

Use the `odaadmcli show server` command to display server details.

**File Path**

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

**Syntax**

To show server details:

```
odaadmcli show server [-h]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

**Example 12-122 Displaying Server Details**

```
# odaadmcli show server

Power State : On
Open Problems : 0
Model : ORACLE SERVER X7-2
Type : Rack Mount
Part Number : 7320190
Serial Number : 1605NM10JJ
Primary OS : Not Available
ILOM Address : 10.209.8.215
ILOM MAC Address : 00:10:E0:95:98:F0
Description : Oracle Database Appliance X7-2 Small 1606NM1s02
Locator Light : Off
Actual Power Consumption : 135 watts
Ambient Temperature : 24.250 degree C
Open Problems Report : System is healthy
```

## Storage Commands

Understand the commands to perform storage operations and diagnostics.

- [odaadmcli expand storage](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli expand storage` command to expand storage.
- [odaadmcli show disk](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show disk` command to display the status of a single disk or of all disks on the system.
- [odaadmcli show diskgroup](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show diskgroup` command to list configured diskgroups or display a specific diskgroup configuration.
- [odaadmcli show controller](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show controller` command to display details of the controller.
- [odaadmcli show raidsyncstatus](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show raidsyncstatus` command to display the RAID SYNC status.
- [odaadmcli show storage](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli show storage` command to show the storage controllers, expanders, and disks.
- [odaadmcli stordiag](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli stordiag` command to collect detailed information for each disk or NVMe.
- [odaadmcli power disk](#)  
Use the `odaadmcli power disk` command to power a disk on or off.
- [odacli validate-storagetopology](#)  
Use the `odacli validate-storagetopology` command to check the cable connections between the system controllers and the storage shelf, as well as the cable connection to the storage expansion shelf (if one is installed).

### odaadmcli expand storage

Use the `odaadmcli expand storage` command to expand storage.

#### File Path

```
ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

#### Syntax

```
odaadmcli expand storage -ndisk number of disks to be added -  
enclosure {0/1} [-h]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--enclosure {0 1}</code>	Defines the JBOD or shelf number. The base storage shelf is 0. The storage expansion shelf is 1.  This option is only available for multi-node platforms. It is not supported on Oracle Database Appliance single node platforms.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.
<code>-ndisk</code>	Defines the number of disks to be added in the enclosure.

## Usage Notes

On high-availability (HA) Oracle Database Appliance hardware models, run the command only on the master node.

Various storage options are available. On multi-node platforms, the base storage is SSD and you can choose to add either SSD or HDD disks. When adding a storage expansion shelf, all disks must be the same type (you cannot combine SSD and HDD disks).



### Note:

In addition to reviewing the `expand storage` command, it is important to follow the procedures for adding storage. Cabling validation and disk placement is important. In some cases, you must move disks to different slots to successfully expand storage.

## odaadmcli show disk

Use the `odaadmcli show disk` command to display the status of a single disk or of all disks on the system.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

To display the status of all disks on the system:

```
odaadmcli show disk [-h]
```

To display the status of a single disk:

```
odaadmcli show disk disk_name [-h]
```

**Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<i>disk_name</i>	(Optional) Define the disk resource name. The resource name format is <code>pd_[0..3]</code> .
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

**Example 12-123 Displaying the Status of All Disks**

To display the status of all the disks on the system:

```
# odaadmcli show disk
NAME          PATH          TYPE      STATE      STATE_DETAILS
pd_00        /dev/nvme0n1 NVD        ONLINE     Good
pd_01        /dev/nvme1n1 NVD        ONLINE     Good
```

**Example 12-124 Displaying the Status of a Single Disk**

To display the status of a disk named `pd_00`:

```
# odaadmcli show disk pd_00

The Resource is : pd_00
ActionTimeout : 1500
ActivePath : /dev/nvme0n1
  AsmDiskList : |data_00||reco_00|
AutoDiscovery : 1
AutoDiscoveryHi : |data:80:NVD||reco:20:NVD|
CheckInterval : 300
ColNum : 0
CriticalWarning : 0
DependListOpr : add
  Dependency : |0|
DiskId : 360025380144d5332
DiskType : NVD
Enabled : 1
ExpNum : 19
HbaPortNum : 10
IState : 0
Initialized : 0
IsConfigDepende : false
  ModelNum : MS1PC2DD3ORA3.2T
  MonitorFlag : 1
MultiPathList : |/dev/nvme0n1|
Name : pd_00
NewPartAddr : 0
OSUserType : |userType:Multiuser|
PlatformName : X7_1_LITE_S
PrevState : Invalid
PrevUsrDevName :
SectorSize : 512
SerialNum : S2LHNAAH000001
```



```

Size : 3200631791616
SlotNum : 0
SmartDiskWarnin : 0
SmartTemperatur : 37
State : Online
StateChangeTs : 1465263789
StateDetails : Good
TotalSectors : 6251233968
TypeName : 0
UsrDevName : NVD_S00_S2LHNAAH101026
VendorName : Samsung
gid : 0
  mode : 660
uid : 0

```

## odaadmcli show diskgroup

Use the `odaadmcli show diskgroup` command to list configured diskgroups or display a specific diskgroup configuration.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

To list configured diskgroups:

```
odaadmcli show diskgroup [-h]
```

To display DATA configurations:

```
odaadmcli show diskgroup [DATA] [-h]
```

To display RECO configurations:

```
odaadmcli show diskgroup [RECO] [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
DATA	(Optional) Displays the DATA diskgroup configurations.
RECO	(Optional) Displays the RECO diskgroup configurations.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-125 Listing All Diskgroups

```
# odaadmcli show diskgroup
```

```

DiskGroups
-----

```

```
DATA
RECO
```

### Example 12-126 Displaying DATA Configurations

```
# odaadmcli show diskgroup DATA

ASM_DISK  PATH                                DISK  STATE  STATE_DETAILS
data_00   /dev/NVD_S00_S2LHNAAH101026p1  pd_00 ONLINE Good
data_01   /dev/NVD_S01_S2LHNAAH101008p1  pd_01 ONLINE Good
```

## odaadmcli show controller

Use the `odaadmcli show controller` command to display details of the controller.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

To display details of the controller:

```
odaadmcli show controller id [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>controller_id, <i>id</i></code>	Defines the controller.
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-127 Showing Controller Details

```
# odaadmcli show controller 1
Controller [1] information:
sun-controller-id = nvme:1b:00.00
sun-id = nvme:1b:00.00
sun-controller-manufacturer = Samsung
pci-vendor-id = 0x0000144d
sun-controller-model = 0xa821
pci-device-id = 0x0000a821
sun-controller-type = NVMe
sun-card-manufacturer = Sun Microsystems
pci-subvendor-id = 0x0000108e
sun-card-model = 0xa803
pci-subdevice-id = 0x0000a803
pci-address = 1b:00.0
sun-version-firmware = KPYA7R3Q
sun-serial-number = S2LHNAAH101008
sun-product-name = MS1PC2DD3ORA3.2T
```

```
pci-slot-number = 11
nvme-power-control = 1
sun-nac-name = /SYS/DBP/NVME1
```

## odaadmcli show raidsyncstatus

Use the `odaadmcli show raidsyncstatus` command to display the RAID SYNC status.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

To display the status of RAID SYNC:

```
odaadmcli show raidsyncstatus [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-128 Displaying the RAID SYNC Status

To display the RAID SYNC details and status:

```
# odaadmcli show raidsyncstatus

Raid Type  Raid Device  Raid Status  maintainPdFailHistory  Rebuildrate
H/W Raid   /dev/sda     Optimal      ON                      30%
```

## odaadmcli show storage

Use the `odaadmcli show storage` command to show the storage controllers, expanders, and disks.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

To display the storage controllers, expanders, and disks:

```
odaadmcli show storage [-h]
```

To show storage errors:

```
odaadmcli show storage -errors [-h]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
--errors	(Optional) Shows storage errors.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-129 Displaying Storage Devices

The following example displays details about the storage devices on an appliance.

```
# odaadmcli show storage

==== BEGIN STORAGE DUMP =====
Host Description: Oracle Corporation:ORACLE SERVER X6-2
Total number of controllers: 2
  Id = 0
  Pci Slot = 10
  Serial Num = S2LHNAAH101026
  Vendor = Samsung
  Model = MS1PC2DD3ORA3.2T
  FwVers = KPYA7R3Q
  strId = nvme:19:00.00
  Pci Address = 19:00.0

  Id = 1
  Pci Slot = 11
  Serial Num = S2LHNAAH101008
  Vendor = Samsung
  Model = MS1PC2DD3ORA3.2T
  FwVers = KPYA7R3Q
  strId = nvme:1b:00.00
  Pci Address = 1b:00.0

Total number of expanders: 0
Total number of PDs: 2
  /dev/nvme0n1 Samsung NVD 3200gb slot: 0 pci : 19
  /dev/nvme1n1 Samsung NVD 3200gb slot: 1 pci : 1

==== END STORAGE DUMP =====
```

## odaadmcli stordiag

Use the `odaadmcli stordiag` command to collect detailed information for each disk or NVMe.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

## Syntax

To collect storage diagnostics for disks and NVMe Express (NVMe):

```
odaadmcli stordiag n [-h]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
-n <i>disk_name</i>	Defines the disk resource name. The resource name format is <code>pd_[0..3]</code> .
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-130 Displaying NVMe Details

To display detailed information for NVMe `pd_00`:

```
# odaadmcli stordiag pd_00
```

## odaadmcli power disk

Use the `odaadmcli power disk` command to power a disk on or off.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odaadmcli
```

### Syntax

To power a disk on or off:

```
odaadmcli power disk {on|off|status} disk_name [-h]
```

## Parameters

Parameter	Description
<i>disk_name</i>	Defines the disk resource name. The resource name format is <code>pd_[0..3]</code> .
{on off status}	Power on a disk, power off a disk, display status.
--help, -h	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

### Example 12-131 Powering a Disk Off

This example shows how to power off a disk.

```
# odaadmcli power disk off pd_00
Disk 'pd_00' is already part of ASM

Are you sure you want to power OFF the disk?: 'pd_00'?
[yes/no]:
```

```
yes  
Powered OFF pd_00
```

### Example 12-132 Checking the Disk Status

This example shows how to get the status of disk pd\_00.

```
# odaadmcli power disk status pd_00  
The disk is powered ON
```

## odacli validate-storagetopology

Use the `odacli validate-storagetopology` command to check the cable connections between the system controllers and the storage shelf, as well as the cable connection to the storage expansion shelf (if one is installed).

Oracle recommends that you run the `odacli validate-storagetopology` command before deploying the system to ensure that the cabling is correct. This will avoid and prevent problems during deployment due to incorrect or missing cable connections. If the cabling is not correct, you will see errors in your output.

### File Path

```
$ORACLE_HOME/opt/oracle/dcs/bin/odacli
```

### Syntax

```
odacli validate-storagetopology [-h]
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>--help, -h</code>	(Optional) Displays help for using the command.

# 13

## Troubleshooting Oracle Database Appliance

Understand tools you can use to validate changes and troubleshoot Oracle Database Appliance problems.

- [Viewing Component Information on the Appliance](#)  
View details of all the components installed on the appliance, and the RPM drift information.
- [Errors When Logging into the Web Console](#)  
If you have problems logging into the Web Console, then it may be due to your browser or credentials.
- [Errors when re-imaging Oracle Database Appliance](#)  
Understand how to troubleshoot errors that occur when re-imaging Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Using the Oracle ORAchk Health Check Tool](#)  
Use Oracle ORAchk Health Check Tool to audit configuration settings and check system health.
- [About Oracle Trace File Analyzer Collector](#)  
Oracle Trace File Analyzer (TFA) Collector simplifies diagnostic data collection on Oracle Grid Infrastructure and Oracle Real Application Clusters systems.
- [Running Oracle Trace File Analyzer \(TFA\) Collector Commands](#)  
Understand the installed location of `tfactl` and the options for the command.
- [Running the Disk Diagnostic Tool](#)  
Use the Disk Diagnostic Tool to help identify the cause of disk problems.
- [Running the Oracle Database Appliance Hardware Monitoring Tool](#)  
The Oracle Database Appliance Hardware Monitoring Tool displays the status of different hardware components in Oracle Database Appliance server.
- [Configuring a Trusted SSL Certificate for Oracle Database Appliance](#)  
The Web Console and DCS Controller use SSL-based HTTPS protocol for secure communication. Understand the implications of this added security and the options to configure SSL certificates.
- [Disabling the Web Console](#)  
You can also disable the Web Console. Disabling the Web Console means you can only manage your appliance through the command-line interface.
- [Preparing Log Files for Oracle Support Services](#)  
If necessary, use the command `odaadmcli manage diagcollect` to collect diagnostic files to send to Oracle Support Services.

## Viewing Component Information on the Appliance

View details of all the components installed on the appliance, and the RPM drift information.

### Viewing the Bill of Materials in the Web Console

Use the Appliance tab in the Web Console to view information about your deployment and the installed components. The Advanced Information tab displays information about the following components:

- Grid Infrastructure Version, and the home directory
- Database Version, Home location, and Edition
- Location and details about the databases configured
- All patches applied to the appliance
- Firmware Controller and Disks
- ILOM information
- BIOS version
- List of RPMs

In the List of RPMs section, click **Show** and then click **RPM Drift** to view the differences between the RPMs installed on the appliance, and the RPMs shipped in the latest Oracle Database Appliance Patch Bundle Update release.

Click **Download** to save the components report. You can use this report to help diagnose any deployment issues.

### Viewing the Bill of Materials from the Command Line

The bill of materials is also available through the command line for bare metal and virtualized platforms deployments. The information about the installed components is collected according to a set schedule, and stored in the location `/opt/oracle/dcs/Inventory/` for bare metal deployments and in the `/opt/oracle/oak/Inventory/` directory for virtualized platforms. The file is stored in the format `oda_bom_TimeStamp.json`. Use the command `describe-system` to view the bill of materials on the command line. See the *Oracle Database Command-Line Interface* chapter for command options and usage notes.

#### Example 13-1 Example Command to View the Bill of Materials from the Command Line for Bare Metal Deployments

```
# odacli describe-system -b
ODA Components Information
-----
Component Name          Comonent
Details
-----
-----
NODE                     Name : rwsoda6m003
                        Domain Name :
                        Time Stamp : July 29, 2018 7:00:12 PM UTC
```



```
RPMS                                     Installed RPMS : acl-2.2.49-7.el6_9.1.x86_64,
                                                aide-0.14-11.el6.x86_64,
                                                alsa-lib-1.1.0-4.el6.x86_64,
                                                at-3.1.10-49.el6.x86_64,
                                                atk-1.30.0-1.el6.x86_64,
                                                attr-2.4.44-7.el6.x86_64,
                                                audit-2.4.5-6.el6.x86_64,
                                                audit-
libs-2.4.5-6.el6.x86_64,
python-2.4.5-6.el6.x86_64,
libs-1.0.0-10.el6.x86_64,
authconfig-6.1.12-23.el6.x86_64,
libs-0.6.25-17.el6.x86_64,
openfwfwf-5.2-10.el6.noarch,
basesystem-10.0-4.0.1.el6.noarch,
libs-9.8.2-0.62.rc1.el6_9.5.x86_64,
utils-9.8.2-0.62.rc1.el6_9.5.x86_64,
binutils-2.20.51.0.2-5.47.el6_9.1.x86_64,
biosdevname-0.7.2-1.el6.x86_64,
utils-1.2-10.el6.x86_64,
busybox-1.15.1-21.el6_6.x86_64,
libs-1.0.5-7.el6_0.x86_64,
certificates-2017.2.14-65.0.1.el6_9.noarch,
celt051-0.5.1.3-0.el6.x86_64,
checkpolicy-2.0.22-1.el6.x86_64,
chkconfig-1.3.49.5-1.el6.x86_64,
ppl-0.15.7-1.2.el6.x86_64,
libcap1-1.10-1.x86_64,
+-33-3.2.3-69.el6.x86_64,
audit-libs-
augeas-
avahi-
b43-
bash-4.1.2-48.el6.x86_64,
bc-1.06.95-1.el6.x86_64,
bind-
bind-
bridge-
bzip2-1.0.5-7.el6_0.x86_64,
bzip2-
ca-
cairo-1.8.8-6.el6_6.x86_64,
clog-
compat-
compat-libstdc+
```

```

readline5-5.2-17.1.el6.x86_64,
+-4.8.2-16.el6.x86_64,
ConsoleKit-0.4.1-6.el6.x86_64,
libs-0.4.1-6.el6.x86_64,
x11-0.4.1-6.el6.x86_64,
coreutils-8.4-46.0.1.el6.x86_64,
libs-8.4-46.0.1.el6.x86_64,

cpupowerutils-1.3-2.el6.x86_64,
cpuspeed-1.5-22.0.1.el6.x86_64,
cracklib-2.8.16-4.el6.x86_64,
dicts-2.8.16-4.el6.x86_64,
crash-7.1.4-1.0.1.el6_7.x86_64,
crda-3.13_2015.10.22-3.el6.x86_64,
createrepo-0.9.9-27.el6_9.noarch,
cronie-1.4.4-16.el6_8.2.x86_64,
anacron-1.4.4-16.el6_8.2.x86_64,

luks-1.2.0-11.el6.x86_64,
libs-1.2.0-11.el6.x86_64,
libs-1.4.2-78.el6_9.x86_64,

....
....
....

compat-
compat-sap-c+
ConsoleKit-
ConsoleKit-
coreutils-
cpio-2.10-13.el6.x86_64,
cpp-4.4.7-18.el6.x86_64,
cracklib-
cronie-
crontabs-1.10-33.el6.noarch,
cryptsetup-
cryptsetup-luks-
cups-

```

**Example 13-2 Example Command to View the Bill of Materials from the Command Line for Virtualized Platforms**

```
# oakcli describe-system -b
```

**Example 13-3 Example Command to View the Bill of Materials Report from the Stored Location**

```
# ls -la /opt/oracle/dcs/Inventory/  
total 264  
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 83550 Apr 26 05:41 oda_bom_2018-04-26_05-41-36.json
```

## Errors When Logging into the Web Console

If you have problems logging into the Web Console, then it may be due to your browser or credentials.

 **Note:**

Oracle Database Appliance uses self-signed certificates. Your browser determines how you log into the Web Console. Depending on the browser and browser version, you may receive a warning or error that the certificate is invalid or not trusted because it is self-signed, or that the connection is not private. Ensure that you accept the self-signed certificate for the agent and Web Console.

Follow these steps to log into the Web Console:

1. Open a browser window.
2. Go to the following URL: `https://ODA-host-ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html`
3. Get the security certificate (or certificate), confirm the security exception, and add an exception.
4. Log in with your Oracle Database Appliance credentials.  
If you have not already set the `oda-admin` password, then a message is displayed, advising you to change the default password to comply with your system security requirements.
5. If you have not added an exception for the agent security certificate, then a message about accepting agent certificate is displayed.
6. Using a different tab in your browser, go to the following URL: `https://ODA-host-ip-address:7070/login`
7. Get the security certificate (or certificate), confirm the security exception, and add an exception.
8. Refresh the Web Console URL : `https://ODA-host-ip-address:7093/mgmt/index.html`

**Related Topics**

- [Creating the Appliance](#)  
Create the appliance using the Web Console.
- <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/indexes/products/browser-policy-2859268.html>

## Errors when re-imaging Oracle Database Appliance

Understand how to troubleshoot errors that occur when re-imaging Oracle Database Appliance.

If re-imaging Oracle Database Appliance fails, with old header issues such as errors in storage discovery, or in running GI root scripts, or disk group RECO creation, then use the force mode with `cleanup.pl`.

```
# perl cleanup.pl -f
```

To ensure that re-imaging is successful, remove the old headers from the storage disks by running the secure erase tool. Verify that the OAK/ASM headers are removed.

```
# cleanup.pl -erasedata  
# cleanup.pl -checkHeader
```

Retry the re-imaging operation.

### Related Topics

- [Re-imaging Oracle Database Appliance](#)  
Bare metal operating system re-imaging installs Oracle Database Appliance operating system software on the local (boot) drive.

## Using the Oracle ORAchk Health Check Tool

Use Oracle ORAchk Health Check Tool to audit configuration settings and check system health.

Oracle ORAchk Health Check Tool performs proactive health checks for the Oracle software stack and scans for known problems.

Oracle ORAchk Health Check Tool audits important configuration settings for Oracle RAC two-node deployments in the following categories:

- Operating system kernel parameters and packages
- Oracle Database
- Database parameters, and other database configuration settings
- Oracle Grid Infrastructure, which includes Oracle Clusterware and Oracle Automatic Storage Management

ORAchk is aware of the entire system. It checks the configuration to indicate if best practices are being followed.

### See Also:

For more information about ORAchk, see My Oracle Support note 1268927.2, "ORAchk Health Checks for the Oracle Stack" at <https://support.oracle.com/rs?type=doc&id=1268927.2>

 **Note:**

Before running ORAchk, check for the latest version of ORAchk, and download and install it.

### Running ORAchk on Oracle Database Appliance 19.5 Baremetal Systems for New Installation

When you provision or upgrade to Oracle Database Appliance 19.5, the ORAchk RPMs are installed in the directory `/opt/oracle.SupportTools/orachk/`. You can verify that ORAchk is installed by running the following command:

```
[root@oak bin]# rpm -q orachk
orachk-18.3.0_20180808-2.x86_64
```

If an older version of ORAchk exists, then copy the latest version of `orachk` that you downloaded from My Oracle Support into the `/opt/oracle.SupportTools/orachk/` directory, and run the following command:

```
orachk -upgrade
```

The command upgrades your `orachk` utility to the latest version.

To run `orachk`, use the following command:

```
[root@oak bin]# orachk
This computer is for [S]ingle instance database or part of a [C]luster to
run
RAC database [S|C] [C]: S
orachk did not find the inventory location on oak from environment. Does
oak
have Oracle software installed [y/n][n]? n
...
Detailed report (html) -
/opt/oracle.SupportTools/orachk/orachk_oak_091918_182425/
orachk_oak_091918_182
425.html

UPLOAD [if required] -
/opt/oracle.SupportTools/orachk/orachk_oak_091918_182425.zip
```

### Running ORAchk on Oracle Database Appliance Baremetal Systems for Releases Earlier than 19.5

1. Open the command-line interface as `root`.
2. Navigate to the ORAchk tool in the `/suptools` directory.

```
/u01/app/12.2.0.1/grid/suptools/orachk
```

3. Run the utility.

```
./orachk
```

When all checks are finished, a detailed report is available. The output displays the location of the report in an HTML format and the location of a zip file if you want to upload the report.

4. Review the Oracle Database Appliance Assessment Report and system health and troubleshoot any issues that are identified.

The report includes a summary and filters that enable you to focus on specific areas. For example, you can choose the filter to show failed checks only, show checks with a Fail, Warning, Info, or Pass status, or any combination.

## About Oracle Trace File Analyzer Collector

Oracle Trace File Analyzer (TFA) Collector simplifies diagnostic data collection on Oracle Grid Infrastructure and Oracle Real Application Clusters systems.

TFA behaves in a similar manner to the ion utility packaged with Oracle Clusterware. Both tools collect and package diagnostic data. However, TFA is much more powerful than ion, because TFA centralizes and automates the collection of diagnostic information.

TFA provides the following key benefits and options:

- Encapsulation of diagnostic data collection for all Oracle Grid Infrastructure and Oracle RAC components on all cluster nodes into a single command, which you run from a single node
- Option to "trim" diagnostic files during data collection to reduce data upload size
- Options to isolate diagnostic data collection to a given time period, and to a particular product component, such as Oracle ASM, RDBMS, or Oracle Clusterware
- Centralization of collected diagnostic output to a single node in Oracle Database Appliance, if desired
- On-Demand Scans of all log and trace files for conditions indicating a problem
- Real-Time Scan Alert Logs for conditions indicating a problem (for example, Database Alert Logs, Oracle ASM Alert Logs, and Oracle Clusterware Alert Logs)

### See Also:

Refer to My Oracle Support note 1513912.1 "TFA Collector - Tool for Enhanced Diagnostic Gathering" for more information. <https://support.oracle.com/rs?type=doc&id=1513912.1>

# Running Oracle Trace File Analyzer (TFA) Collector Commands

Understand the installed location of `tfactl` and the options for the command.

## About Using `tfactl` to Collect Diagnostic Information

When you provision or upgrade to Oracle Database Appliance 19.5, Oracle Trace File Analyzer (TFA) Collector is installed in the directory `/opt/oracle/tfa/tfa_home`. You can invoke the command line utility for TFA, `tfactl` from the directory `/opt/oracle/tfa/tfa_home/bin/tfactl`, or simply type `tfactl`.

You can use the following command options to run `tfactl`:

```
/opt/oracle/tfa/tfa_home/bin/tfactl diagcollect -ips|-oda|-odalite|-dcs|-
odabackup|
-odapatching|-odadataguard|-odaprovisioning|-odaconfig|-odasystem|-
odastorage|-database|
-asm|-crsclient|-dbclient|-dbwlm|-tns|-rhp|-procinfo|-afd|-crs|-cha|-wls|
-emagent|-oms|-ocm|-emplugins|-em|-acfs|-install|-cfgtools|-os|-ashhtml|-
ashtext|
-awrhtml|-awrtext -mask -sanitize
```

**Table 13-1 Command Options for `tfactl` Tool**

Option	Description
<code>-h</code>	(Optional) Describes all the options for this command.
<code>-ips</code>	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the specified component.
<code>-oda</code>	(Optional) Use this option to view the logs for the entire Appliance.
<code>-odalite</code>	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the odalite component.
<code>-dcs</code>	(Optional) Use this option to view the DCS log files.
<code>-odabackup</code>	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the backup components for the Appliance.
<code>-odapatching</code>	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for patching components of the Appliance.
<code>-odadataguard</code>	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for Oracle Data Guard component of the Appliance.
<code>-odaprovisioning</code>	(Optional) Use this option to view provisioning logs for the Appliance.
<code>-odaconfig</code>	(Optional) Use this option to view configuration-related diagnostic logs.

**Table 13-1 (Cont.) Command Options for tfactl Tool**

Option	Description
-odasystem	(Optional) Use this option to view system information.
-odastorage	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the Appliance storage.
-database	(Optional) Use this option to view database-related log files.
-asm	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the Appliance.
-crsclient	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the Appliance.
-dbclient	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the Appliance.
-dbwlm	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the specified component.
-tns	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for TNS.
-rhp	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for Rapid Home Provisioning.
-afd	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for Oracle ASM Filter Driver.
-crs	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for Oracle Clusterware.
-cha	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the Cluster Health Monitor.
-wls	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for Oracle WebLogic Server.
-emagent	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the Oracle Enterprise Manager agent.
-oms	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the Oracle Enterprise Manager Management Service.
-ocm	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the specified component.
-emplugins	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for Oracle Enterprise Manager plug-ins.
-em	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for Oracle Enterprise Manager deployment.
-acfs	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for Oracle ACFS storage.
-install	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for installation.
-cfgtools	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the configuration tools.



**Table 13-1 (Cont.) Command Options for tfactl Tool**

Option	Description
-os	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the operating system.
-ashhtml	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the specified component.
-ashtext	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the Appliance.
-awrhtml	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the Appliance.
-awrtxt	(Optional) Use this option to view the diagnostic logs for the specified component.
-mask	(Optional) Use this option to choose to mask sensitive data in the log collection.
-sanitize	(Optional) Use this option to choose to sanitize (redact) sensitive data in the log collection.

**Usage Notes**

You can use Trace File Collector (the `tfactl` command) to collect all log files for the Oracle Database Appliance components.

The following types of sensitive information can be redacted using the `-mask` or the `-sanitize` option:

- Host names
- IP addresses
- Database names
- Tablespace names
- Service names
- Ports
- Operating System user names

For example, when the `-mask` option is used, all instances of a sensitive name such as a database name called "payrolldb" are replaced with "\*\*\*\*\*" in the TFA collection.

For example, when the `-sanitize` option is used, all instances of a sensitive name such as a database name called "payrolldb" are replaced with another string, such as "oCjIN7F8P", in the TFA collection.

## Running the Disk Diagnostic Tool

Use the Disk Diagnostic Tool to help identify the cause of disk problems.

The tool produces a list of 14 disk checks for each node. To display details, where `n` represents the disk resource name, enter the following command:

```
# odaadmcli stordiag n
```

For example, to display detailed information for NVMe pd\_00:

```
# odaadmcli storddiag pd_00
```

## Running the Oracle Database Appliance Hardware Monitoring Tool

The Oracle Database Appliance Hardware Monitoring Tool displays the status of different hardware components in Oracle Database Appliance server.

The tool is implemented with the Trace File Analyzer collector. Use the tool both on bare-metal and on virtualized systems. The Oracle Database Appliance Hardware Monitoring Tool reports information only for the node on which you run the command. The information it displays in the output depend on the component that you select to review.

### Bare Metal Platform

You can see the list of monitored components by running the command `odaadmcli show -h`

To see information about specific components, use the command syntax `odaadmcli show component`, where *component* is the hardware component that you want to query. For example, the command `odaadmcli show power` shows information specifically about the Oracle Database Appliance power supply:

```
# odaadmcli show power
```

NAME	HEALTH	HEALTH_DETAILS	PART_NO.	SERIAL_NO.
Power_Supply_0	OK	-	7079395	476856Z+1514CE056G

(Continued)

LOCATION	INPUT_POWER	OUTPUT_POWER	INLET_TEMP	EXHAUST_TEMP
PS0	Present	112 watts	28.000 degree C	34.938 degree C

### Virtualized Platform

You can see the list of monitored components by running the command `oakcli show -h`

To see information about specific components, use the command syntax `oakcli show component`, where *component* is the hardware component that you want to query. For example, the command `oakcli show power` shows information specifically about the Oracle Database Appliance power supply:

```
# oakcli show power
```

NAME	HEALTH	HEALTH_DETAILS	PART_NO.	SERIAL_NO.
Power Supply_0	OK	-	7047410	476856F+1242CE0020
Power Supply_1	OK	-	7047410	476856F+1242CE004J

(Continued)

LOCATION	INPUT	POWER OUTPUT	POWER INLET TEMP	EXHAUST TEMP
PS0	Present	88 watts	31.250 degree C	34.188 degree C
PS1	Present	66 watts	31.250 degree C	34.188 degree C

 **Note:**

Oracle Database Appliance Server Hardware Monitoring Tool is enabled during initial startup of ODA\_BASE on Oracle Database Appliance Virtualized Platform. When it starts, the tool collects base statistics for about 5 minutes. During this time, the tool displays the message "Gathering Statistics..." message.

## Configuring a Trusted SSL Certificate for Oracle Database Appliance

The Web Console and DCS Controller use SSL-based HTTPS protocol for secure communication. Understand the implications of this added security and the options to configure SSL certificates.

The Web Console provides an added layer of security using certificates and encryption, when an administrator interacts with the appliance. Encryption of data ensures that:

- Data is sent to the intended recipient, and not to any malicious third-party.
- When data is exchanged between the server and the browser, data interception cannot occur nor can the data be edited.

When you connect to the Web Console through HTTPS, the DCS Controller presents your browser with a certificate to verify the identity of appliance. If the web browser finds that the certificate is not from a trusted Certificate Authority (CA), then the browser assumes it has encountered an untrusted source, and generates a security alert message. The security alert dialog boxes display because Web Console security is enabled through HTTPS and SSL, but you have not secured your Web tier properly with a trusted matching certificate from a Certificate Authority. It is possible to purchase commercial certificates from a Certificate Authority or create your own and register them with a Certificate Authority. However, the server and browser certificates must use the same public certificate key and trusted certificate to avoid the error message produced by the browser.

There are three options to configure your certificates:

- Create your own key and Java keystore, ensure it is signed by a Certificate Authority (CA) and then import it for use.
- Package an existing Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format key and certificates in a new Java keystore.
- Convert an existing PKCS or PFX keystore to a Java keystore and configure it for the Web Console.

 **Note:**

For Oracle Database Appliance High-Availability hardware models, run the configuration steps on **both** nodes.

The following topics explain how to configure these options:

- [Option 1: Creating a Key and Java Keystore and Importing a Trusted Certificate](#)  
Use `keytool`, a key and certificate management utility, to create a keystore and a signing request.
- [Option 2: Packaging an Existing PEM-format Key and Certificates in a New Java Keystore](#)  
Use the OpenSSL tool to package Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) files in a PKCS keystore.
- [Option 3: Converting an Existing PKCS or PFX Keystore to a Java Keystore](#)  
If you have an existing PKCS or PFX keystore for your server's domain, convert it to a Java keystore.
- [Configuring the DCS Server to Use Custom Keystore](#)  
After packaging or converting your keystore into Java keystore, configure the DCS server to use your keystore.
- [Configuring the DCS Agent for Custom Certificate](#)  
After you import the certificate into the keystore, configure the DCS agent to use the same certificate.

## Option 1: Creating a Key and Java Keystore and Importing a Trusted Certificate

Use `keytool`, a key and certificate management utility, to create a keystore and a signing request.

1. Create the keystore:

```
keytool -genkeypair -alias your.domain.com -storetype jks -keystore
your.domain.com.jks -validity 366 -keyalg RSA -keysize 4096
```

2. The command prompts you for identifying data:

```
1. What is your first and last name? your.domain.com
2. What is the name of your organizational unit? yourunit
3. What is the name of your organization? yourorg
4. What is the name of your City or Locality? yourcity
5. What is the name of your State or Province? yourstate
6. What is the two-letter country code for this unit? US
```

3. Create the certificate signing request (CSR):

```
keytool -certreq -alias your.domain.com -file your.domain.com.csr
-keystore your.domain.com.jks -ext san=dns:your.domain.com
```

4. Request a Certificate Authority (CA) signed certificate:

- a. In the directory where you ran Step 1 above, locate the file `your.domain.com.csr`.
  - b. Submit the file to your Certificate Authority (CA).  
Details vary from one CA to another. Typically, you submit your request through a website; then the CA contacts you to verify your identity. CAs can send signed reply files in a variety of formats, and CAs use a variety of names for those formats. The CA's reply must be in PEM or PKCS#7 format.
  - c. There may be a waiting period for the CA's reply.
5. Import the CA's reply. The CA's reply will provide one PKCS file or multiple PEM files.
    - a. Copy the CA's files into the directory where you created the keystore in Step 1 above.
    - b. Use `keytool` to export the certificate from the keystore:

```
keytool -exportcert -alias your.domain.com -file /opt/oracle/dcs/
conf/keystore-cert.crt
-keystore your.domain.name.jks
```

6. Use `keytool` to import the keystore certificate and the CA reply files:

```
keytool -importcert -trustcacerts -alias your.domain.com
-file /opt/oracle/dcs/conf/keystore-cert.crt -keystore /opt/oracle/dcs/
conf/dcs-ca-certs
```

To import PKCS file, run the command:

```
keytool -importcert -trustcacerts -alias your.domain.com -file
CAreply.pkcs -keystore /opt/oracle/dcs/conf/dcs-ca-certs
```

`CAreply.pkcs` is the name of the PKCS file provided by the CA and `your.domain.com` is the complete domain name of your server.

If the CA sent PEM files, then there may be one file, but most often there are two or three. Import the files to your keystore with commands in the order shown below, after substituting your values:

```
keytool -importcert -alias root -file root.cert.pem -keystore /opt/
oracle/dcs/conf/dcs-ca-certs -trustcacerts
keytool -importcert -alias intermediate -file
intermediate.cert.pem /opt/oracle/dcs/conf/dcs-ca-certs -trustcacerts
keytool -importcert -alias intermediat2 -file
intermediat2.cert.pem /opt/oracle/dcs/conf/dcs-ca-certs -trustcacerts
keytool -importcert -alias your.domain.com -file server.cert.pem /opt/
oracle/dcs/conf/dcs-ca-certs -trustcacerts
```

`root.cert.pem` is the name of the root certificate file and `intermediate.cert.pem` is the name of the intermediate certificate file. The root and intermediate files link the CA's signature to a widely trusted root certificate that is known to web browsers. Most, but not all, CA replies include roots and intermediates.

*server.cert.pem* is the name of the server certificate file. The file links your domain name with your public key and the CA's signature.

## Option 2: Packaging an Existing PEM-format Key and Certificates in a New Java Keystore

Use the OpenSSL tool to package Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) files in a PKCS keystore.

If you have an existing private key and certificates for your server's domain in PEM format, importing them into a Java keystore requires the OpenSSL tool. OpenSSL can package the PEM files in a PKCS keystore. Java keytool can then convert the PKCS keystore to a Java keystore.

1. Install OpenSSL.
2. Copy your private key, server certificate, and intermediate certificate into one directory.
3. Package the key and certificates into a PKCS keystore as follows:

```
openssl pkcs12 -export -in server.cert.pem -inkey private.key.pem -  
certfile  
intermediate.cert.pem -name "your.domain.com" -out your.domain.com.p12
```

*server.cert.pem* is the name of the server certificate file, *your.domain.com* is the complete domain name of your server, *private.key.pem* is the private counterpart to the public key in *server.cert.pem*, and *intermediate.cert.pem* is the name of the intermediate certificate file.

Convert the resulting PKCS keystore file, *your.domain.com.p12* into a Java keystore.

## Option 3: Converting an Existing PKCS or PFX Keystore to a Java Keystore

If you have an existing PKCS or PFX keystore for your server's domain, convert it to a Java keystore.

1. Run the command:

```
keytool -importkeystore -srckeystore your.domain.com.p12 -srcstoretype  
PKCS12  
-destkeystore /opt/oracle/dcs/conf/dcs-ca-certs -deststoretype jks
```

*your.domain.com.p12* is the existing keystore file and *your.domain.com* is the complete domain name of your server.

2. Configure the DCS server as explained in the topic *Configuring the DCS Server to Use Custom Keystore*.

## Configuring the DCS Server to Use Custom Keystore

After packaging or converting your keystore into Java keystore, configure the DCS server to use your keystore.

1. Login to the appliance.

```
ssh -l root oda-host-name
```

2. Generate the obfuscated keystore password:

```
java -cp /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/dcs-controller-n.n.n.-SNAPSHOT.jar  
org.eclipse.jetty.util.security.Password keystore-password
```

For example:

```
[root@oda]# java -cp /opt/oracle/dcs/bin/dcs-controller-SNAPSHOT.jar  
org.eclipse.jetty.util.security.Password test  
12:46:33.858 [main] DEBUG org.eclipse.jetty.util.log  
- Logging to Logger[org.eclipse.jetty.util.log] via  
org.eclipse.jetty.util.log.Slf4jLog  
12:46:33.867 [main] INFO org.eclipse.jetty.util.log  
- Logging initialized @239ms to org.eclipse.jetty.util.log.Slf4jLog  
test  
OBF:1z0f1vu91vv11z0f  
MD5:098f6bcd4621d373cade4e832627b4f6  
[root@scaoda7s001 conf]#
```

Copy the password that starts with OBF:.

3. Update the DCS controller configuration file.

```
cd /opt/oracle/dcs/conf
```

Update the following parameters in `dcs-controller.json`:

```
"keyStorePath": "keystore-directory-path/your.domain.com.jks"  
"trustStorePath": "/opt/oracle/dcs/conf/dcs-ca-certs"  
"keyStorePassword": "obfuscated keystorepassword"  
"certAlias": "your.domain.com"
```

4. Restart the DCS Controller.

```
initctl stop initdcscontroller  
initctl start initdcscontroller
```

5. Access the Web Console at `https://oda-host-name:7093/mgmt/index.html`.

## Configuring the DCS Agent for Custom Certificate

After you import the certificate into the keystore, configure the DCS agent to use the same certificate.

1. Update the DCS agent configuration file:

```
cd /opt/oracle/dcs/conf
```

Update the following parameters in the `dcs-agent.json` file:

```
"keyStorePath": "keystore-directory-path/your.domain.com.jks"  
"trustStorePath": /opt/oracle/dcs/conf/dcs-ca-certs  
"keyStorePassword": "obfuscated keystorepassword"  
"certAlias": "your.domain.com"
```

2. Restart the DCS agent:

```
initctl stop initdcsagent  
initctl start initdcsagent
```

3. Access the agent at `https://oda-host-name:7070`.
4. Update the CLI certificates.

```
cp -f /opt/oracle/dcs/conf/dcs-ca-certs  
/opt/oracle/dcs/dcscli/dcs-ca-certs
```

5. Update the DCS command-line configuration files:

```
[root@]# cd /opt/oracle/dcs/dcscli
```

Update the following parameters in `dcscli-adm.conf` and `dcscli.conf`:

```
TrustStorePath=/opt/oracle/dcs/conf/dcs-ca-certs  
TrustStorePassword=keystore_password
```

## Disabling the Web Console

You can also disable the Web Console. Disabling the Web Console means you can only manage your appliance through the command-line interface.

1. Log in to the appliance:

```
ssh -l root oda-host-name
```

2. Stop the DCS controller. For HA systems, run the command on both nodes.

```
initctl stop initdcscontroller
```



## Preparing Log Files for Oracle Support Services

If necessary, use the command `odaadmcli manage diagcollect` to collect diagnostic files to send to Oracle Support Services.

Use the Bill Of Materials report saved in the `/opt/oracle/dcs/Inventory/` directory, to enable Oracle Support to help troubleshoot errors, if necessary.

If you have a system fault that requires help from Oracle Support Services, then you may need to provide log records to help Oracle support diagnose your issue.

You can use Trace File Collector (the `tfactl` command) to collect all log files for the Oracle Database Appliance components.

You can also collect log file information by running the command `odaadmcli manage diagcollect`. This command consolidates information from log files stored on Oracle Database Appliance into a single log file for use by Oracle Support Services. The location of the file is specified in the command output.

### **Example 13-4 Collecting log file information for a time period, masking sensitive data**

```
# odaadmcli manage diagcollect --dataMask --fromTime 2019-08-12 --toTime
2019-08-25
DataMask is set as true
FromTime is set as: 2019-08-12
ToTime is set as: 2019-08-25
TFACTL command is: /opt/oracle/tfa/tfa_home/bin/tfactl
Data mask is set.
Collect data from 2019-08-12
Collect data to 2019-08-25
```

# A

## Oracle Database Appliance Software Configuration Defaults

Oracle Database Appliance software configuration defaults.

- [Directory Paths for Oracle Database Appliance](#)  
Locate the storage and mount configuration file paths for Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Location of Log Files](#)  
Log files are available for actions performed in the command-line interface and Web Console and are useful when you need to track and debug jobs.
- [Oracle Groups and User Configurations for Oracle Database Appliance](#)  
Review the groups and default users when you use the Web Console to deploy the appliance. All passwords are set to the Master password that you define during deployment.

### Directory Paths for Oracle Database Appliance

Locate the storage and mount configuration file paths for Oracle Database Appliance.

Oracle homes on Oracle Database Appliance follow Optimal Flexible Architecture guidelines.

#### Directory Paths for Oracle Database Appliance

Item	Directory Path
Grid home	<i>/u01/app/release-specific_name/gi owner</i>
Grid base	<i>/u01/app/gi owner</i>
Oracle home	<i>/u01/app/rdbms owner/product/ rdbms_version/ dbhome_home_sequence_number</i>
Oracle base	<i>/u01/app/rdbms owner</i>
Oracle Inventory	<i>/u01/app/oraInventory</i>

### Location of Log Files

Log files are available for actions performed in the command-line interface and Web Console and are useful when you need to track and debug jobs.

You can also use the Oracle Appliance Manager Web Console to view job activity, including the tasks that make up the job. The status of each task appears in the Web Console and you can drill down to get greater details.

If you log a Service Request, upload all of the logs in the `/opt/oracle/dcs/log` directory.

### Patching Log Files

All patching-related information is logged in the `dcs-agent` log file at `/opt/oracle/dcs/log/dcs-agent.log`.

### DCS Agent Log Directories

Agent-specific activities are logged in the `dcs-agent` log.

The DCS Agent, controller, and command-line interface output appears in the `/opt/oracle/dcs/log/dcs-agent.log` file.

If an error occurs in the command-line interface layer, then the output will show in the `/opt/oracle/dcs/log/dcscli.log` file first.

### Storage Logs

Storage-related activity is logged in the `oakd` log file.

```
/opt/oracle/oak/log/hostname/oak/oakd.log
```

For example, `/opt/oracle/oak/log/myhost/oak/oakd.log`

Use the `odaadmcli manage diagcollect` command to collect diagnostic logs for storage components. The files are saved in the `oakdiag` log file.

```
/opt/oracle/oak/log/hostname/oakdiag/file_name.tar.gz
```

For example, `/opt/oracle/oak/log/myhost/oakdiag/oakStorage-myhost-20161120_2217.tar.gz`

### Database Logs

Online logs are stored in the `/u03/app/db user/redo/` directory.

Oracle Fast Recovery Area (FRA) is located in the `/u03/app/db user/fast_recovery_area` directory.

Database alert logs are stored in the location `$ORACLE_BASE/diag/rdbms/database_unique_name`.

### Oracle Auto Service Request (Oracle ASR) Log Files

All log files for Oracle ASR are located in the `/var/opt/asrmanager/log/` directory.

# Oracle Groups and User Configurations for Oracle Database Appliance

Review the groups and default users when you use the Web Console to deploy the appliance. All passwords are set to the Master password that you define during deployment.

## Default Operating System Groups and User Configurations

**Table A-1 Default Operating System Groups and Users Configuration for Oracle Database Appliance**

Groups and Users	Default Value
Oracle Grid Infrastructure installation owner	grid, UID 1001
Oracle Database installation owner	oracle, UID 1000
Oracle Database system administrator	sys
Oracle Database generic administrator	system
Oracle Inventory system privileges group	oinstall, GID 1001
Oracle ASM Administrators system privileges	asmadmin, GID 1004
Oracle ASM Users system privileges	asmdba, GID 1006
Oracle ASM Operator system privileges	asmoper, GID 1005
Oracle Database Administrators system privileges	dba, GID 1003
Oracle Database Operator system privileges	dbaoper, GID 1002

### Oracle Groups and User Configurations

You can use the Web Console or the `odacli create-appliance` command and a JSON file to deploy the appliance. The following configurations are supported:

- 2 Users with 6 groups (operating system role separation)
- Single User with 6 groups (no operating system role separation)
- Single user with 2 groups (no operating system role separation)

You can customize `groupname`, `username`, and `UID`.

# B

## Oracle Database Appliance Storage Defaults

Review this section to understand Oracle Database Appliance storage architecture and options and how to determine usable storage.

- [About Database File Storage](#)  
Use Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) or Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System (Oracle ACFS) for database files storage.
- [Oracle ACFS Mount Points and Storage Space](#)  
Review Oracle ASM Cluster file system (ACFS) mount points for Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Displaying Mounted Disk Details](#)  
Use the Oracle Automatic Storage Management `lsdgs` command to display mounted disk groups and their information for Oracle Database Appliance.
- [Usable Space on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M](#)  
Review the table for the approximate amount of usable space for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M.
- [Usable Space on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA](#)  
Review the table for the approximate amount of usable space for high performance or high capacity on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA.
- [Usable Free Space with Oracle ASM](#)  
When Oracle ASM calculates usable Free Space, it determines the amount of space to reserve in the case of a disk failure.

### About Database File Storage

Use Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) or Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System (Oracle ACFS) for database files storage.

Database file systems are used exclusively for storing database files, and they include a DATA file system for database data files and a RECO file system for storing archive files and backups. Oracle Database Appliance supports Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System (Oracle ACFS) or Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) database file storage. You determine the type of database storage when you create the database.

#### About Oracle ASM Database Storage

With Oracle ASM, database datafiles are stored in DATA diskgroup. On X8-2, X7-2S, and X7-2L systems, which do not have REDO diskgroup, redo and archive files are stored in RECO diskgroup. On X7-2-HA systems, redo logs are stored in the REDO diskgroup.

Reserved storage is the amount of Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) storage required to maintain redundancy in the event of a disk failure. If you use

the reserve storage capacity, then the system continues to run, and it is protected through Oracle ASM mirroring. However, in the event of a disk failure, the system is then running in a non-protected and degraded mode. In this event, you must replace disks immediately. If there is no reserved space available, then rebalance cannot restore redundancy after a disk failure.

If you specify mirroring for a file, then Oracle ASM automatically stores redundant copies of the file extents in separate failure groups. Failure groups apply to normal, high, and flex redundancy disk groups. You can define the failure groups for each disk group when you create or alter the disk group.

#### See Also:

*Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* in the Oracle Database documentation library for information about Oracle ASM Mirroring and Disk Group Redundancy.

### About Oracle ACFS Database Storage

With Oracle ACFS, an Oracle ACFS file system is created from DATA diskgroup for each database to store datafiles, and an Oracle ACFS file system is created from RECO diskgroup for redo and fast recovery area for all databases.

Each database created under ACFS has its own mount points, `/u02/app/oracle/oradata/dbid`. When you delete a database, you should clean up the files.

### Storage Configuration Options

When Oracle Database Appliance is deployed, you can configure how the storage capacity is shared between DATA diskgroup and RECO diskgroup. You can choose anywhere from 10% to 90% for DATA and the remainder for RECO. The amount of usable storage is determined by the percentage configured for DATA. You can run the command `lsdg` to determine the usable storage on the DATA disk group.

## Oracle ACFS Mount Points and Storage Space

Review Oracle ASM Cluster file system (ACFS) mount points for Oracle Database Appliance.

If you select Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) for database storage when you create a database, then an Oracle ASM Cluster file system (ACFS) is not created. All files are in an Oracle ASM diskgroup.

If you select Oracle ACFS for database storage, then each database has its own Oracle ACFS mount point:

- DATA diskgroup: `/u02/app/oracleuser/oradata/db_name`
- RECO diskgroup: `/u03/app/oracleuser`.

With Oracle ACFS, the following are created:

- A 100G ACFS is created from +DATA diskgroup for each database. This Oracle ACFS automatically extends the space on demand.

- A common Oracle ACFS with 25% of +RECO diskgroup is created with auto extension on. This file system is used for fast recovery area and redo logs for all databases.

**Table B-1 Oracle ACFS Mount Points and Related Oracle ASM Disk Groups and Volume Information**

File System	Oracle ASM Disk Group	Oracle ASM Dynamic Volume	Mount Point
DATA	+DATA	<i>/dev/asm/datdbname-<i>nnn</i></i> For example: <i>/dev/asm/datodacn-123</i>	<i>/u02/app/oracleuser/oradata/<i>dbname</i></i> For example: <i>/u02/app/example/oradata/odacn</i>
RECO	+RECO	<i>/dev/asm/reco-<i>nn</i></i>	<i>/u03/app/oracleuser</i> This mount point is shared by all databases for fast_recovery_area and redo logs. For fast_recovery_area, the path is: <i>/u03/app/oracleuser/fast_recovery_area/<i>db_name</i></i> For redo logs, the path is: <i>/u03/app/oracleuser/redo/<i>db_name</i></i>

**Example B-1 Oracle ACFS Storage Space**

When the Oracle ACFS file systems are created, they do not initially consume all of the storage in the appliance. Space is preserved for additional repositories, or in some cases, database files stored directly in Oracle ASM. You can check for available storage space in your file systems by running the operating system command `df -k` as shown in the following example.

```
# df -k
Filesystem                1K-blocks  Used    Available Use%    /
Mounted on
/dev/mapper/VolGroupSys-LogVolRoot 30963708 14203568 15187276 49%    /
tmpfs                      65952292   647800  65304492
1% /dev/shm
/dev/sda1                   495844    43872   426372  10%    /
boot
/dev/mapper/VolGroupSys-LogVolOpt 61927420 18594420 40187272 32%    /
opt
/dev/mapper/VolGroupSys-LogVolU01 103212320 49621560 48347880 51%    /
u01
/dev/asm/reco-62            76546048 1469676 75076372
2% /u03/app/oracle
/dev/asm/datrdb2-268       104857600 3872368 100985232
4% /u02/app/oracle/oradata/rdb2
/dev/asm/datndb11-268     104857600 247160 104610440
1% /u02/app/oracle/oradata/ndb11
/dev/asm/datndb12-268     104857600 247160 104610440
1% /u02/app/oracle/oradata/ndb12
```

## Displaying Mounted Disk Details

Use the Oracle Automatic Storage Management `lsdg` command to display mounted disk groups and their information for Oracle Database Appliance.

To display information about a specific disk group, specify the disk group in the command.

1. Log in as a `grid` user.
2. Run the Oracle Automatic Storage Management `lsdg` command.

### Example B-2 Determining Storage on the DATA Disk Group

```

ASMCMD [+] > lsdg data

State      Type      Rebal  Sector  Block      AU  Total_MB  Free_MB
Req_mir_free_MB  Usable_file_MB
MOUNTED   NORMAL   N           512    4096    4194304    12288
8835                1117          3859

(continued)
Offline_disks  Voting_files  Name
                0                N  DATA
  
```

## Usable Space on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M

Review the table for the approximate amount of usable space for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M.

Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M use 6.4TB NVMe. The usable data capacity varies because it is derived by converting disk hardware terabytes (based on 1 kilobyte equals 1,000 bytes) into software storage terabytes (based on 1 kilobyte equals 1,024 bytes) and splitting the usable capacity into Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) disk groups.

The estimated usable space is calculated based on the number of drives, where 90% is allocated to data.

**Table B-2 Usable Disk Capacity on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M**

Number of Drives (90% allocated to data)	Normal Redundancy	High Redundancy	Flex Redundancy
X7-2S 2 drives (12.8TB raw storage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DATA: 5.24 TB</li> <li>• RECO: 0.58 TB</li> </ul>	Not applicable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DATA: 5.24 TB</li> <li>• RECO: 0.58 TB</li> </ul>
X7-2M 2 drives (12.8TB raw storage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DATA: 5.24 TB</li> <li>• RECO: 0.58 TB</li> </ul>	Not applicable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DATA: 5.24 TB</li> <li>• RECO: 0.58 TB</li> </ul>



**Table B-2 (Cont.) Usable Disk Capacity on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S and X7-2M**

Number of Drives (90% allocated to data)	Normal Redundancy	High Redundancy	Flex Redundancy
X7-2M 5 drives (32TB raw storage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 9.98 TB</li> <li>RECO: 1.10 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 6.92 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 5.24 TB</li> <li>RECO: 0.58 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 11.64 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 5.24 TB to 9.98 TB</li> <li>RECO: 0.58 TB to 1.10 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 11.64 TB</li> </ul>
X7-2M 8 drives (51.2TB raw storage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 17.26 TB</li> <li>RECO: 1.91 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 8.2 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 10.30 TB</li> <li>RECO: 1.14 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 12.22 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 10.30 TB to 17.26 TB</li> <li>RECO: 1.14 TB to 1.91 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 12.22 TB</li> </ul>

The Reservation value represents the amount of storage required to maintain full redundancy in case of disk failure.

## Usable Space on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA

Review the table for the approximate amount of usable space for high performance or high capacity on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA.

### Usable Space for High Performance

Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA use 3.2 TB solid state drives (SSDs). The usable data capacity varies because it is derived by converting disk hardware terabytes (based on 1 kilobyte equals 1,000 bytes) into software storage terabytes (based on 1 kilobyte equals 1,024 bytes) and splitting the usable capacity into Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) disk groups.

The estimated usable space is calculated based on the number of drives, where 90% is allocated to data.

**Table B-3 Usable Disk Capacity for High Performance on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA**

Number of Drives (90% allocated to data)	Normal Redundancy	High Redundancy	Flex Redundancy
5 drives (16 TB raw storage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 4.99 TB</li> <li>RECO: 0.55 TB</li> <li>REDO: Not Applicable</li> <li>Reservation: 3.46 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 2.61 TB</li> <li>RECO: 0.29 TB</li> <li>REDO: 0.97 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 5.82 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 2.61 TB to 4.99 TB</li> <li>RECO: 0.29 TB to 0.55 TB</li> <li>REDO: 0.97 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 5.82 TB</li> </ul>
10 drives (32 TB raw storage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 11.43 TB</li> <li>RECO: 1.27 TB</li> <li>REDO: Not Applicable</li> <li>Reservation: 3.7 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 6.37 TB</li> <li>RECO: 0.71 TB</li> <li>REDO: 0.97 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 7.84 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 6.37 TB to 11.43 TB</li> <li>RECO: 0.71 TB to 1.27 TB</li> <li>REDO: 0.97 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 7.84 TB</li> </ul>

**Table B-3 (Cont.) Usable Disk Capacity for High Performance on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA**

Number of Drives (90% allocated to data)	Normal Redundancy	High Redundancy	Flex Redundancy
15 drives (48 TB raw storage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 18.09 TB</li> <li>RECO: 2.01 TB</li> <li>REDO: Not Applicable</li> <li>Reservation: 3.45 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 10.36 TB</li> <li>RECO: 1.15 TB</li> <li>REDO: 0.97 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 9.12 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 10.36 TB to 18.09 TB</li> <li>RECO: 1.15 TB to 2.01 TB</li> <li>REDO: 0.97 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 9.12 TB</li> </ul>
20 drives (64 TB raw storage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 23.37 TB</li> <li>RECO: 2.59 TB</li> <li>REDO: Not Applicable</li> <li>Reservation: 6.34 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 13.89 TB</li> <li>RECO: 1.54 TB</li> <li>REDO: 0.97 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 11.89 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 13.89 TB to 23.37 TB</li> <li>RECO: 1.54 TB to 2.59 TB</li> <li>REDO: 0.97 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 11.89 TB</li> </ul>
40 drives (128 TB raw storage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 48.88 TB</li> <li>RECO: 5.43 TB</li> <li>REDO: Not Applicable</li> <li>Reservation: 7.76 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 32.19 TB</li> <li>RECO: 3.14 TB</li> <li>REDO: 1.94 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 22.03 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 32.19 TB to 48.88 TB</li> <li>RECO: 3.14 TB to 5.43 TB</li> <li>REDO: 1.94 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 22.03 TB</li> </ul>

The Reservation value represents the amount of storage required to maintain full redundancy in case of disk failure.

The REDO disk group uses 800 GB raw Solid-State Drives or 0.8 TB total usable space. The REDO disk group uses high redundancy that provides approximately 0.3 TB usable space for database redo logs.



**Note:**

For an Oracle Database Appliance virtualized platform:

- Nn-CDB databases, the REDO disk group has 50% free disk space.
- CDB databases, an Oracle ASM Cluster file system (ACFS) mount point is created per CDB database, based on the template log file size. If this is a Single Instance (SI) database, then multiply by 3. If the database is an Oracle RAC database, then multiply by 4.

**Usable Space for High Capacity**

The usable space for high capacity assumes that 90% is allocated to data and that you use external backup.

**Table B-4 Usable Disk Capacity for High Capacity on Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA**

Number of Drives (90% allocated to data)	Normal Redundancy	High Redundancy	Flex Redundancy
15 drives (150 TB raw storage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 56.47 TB</li> <li>RECO: 6.27 TB</li> <li>REDO: 0.97 TB</li> <li>Flash: 5.52 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 10.91 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 32.37 TB</li> <li>RECO: 3.59 TB</li> <li>REDO: 0.97 TB</li> <li>Flash: 2.61 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 28.5 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 32.37 TB to 56.47 TB</li> <li>RECO: 3.59 TB to 6.27 TB</li> <li>REDO: 0.97 TB</li> <li>Flash: 2.61 TB to 5.52 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 28.5 TB</li> </ul>
30 drives (300 TB raw storage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 113.76 TB</li> <li>RECO: 12.64 TB</li> <li>REDO: 1.94 TB</li> <li>Flash: 12.5 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 19.9 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 64.12 TB</li> <li>RECO: 7.12 TB</li> <li>REDO: 1.94 TB</li> <li>Flash: 7.16 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 58.96 TB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DATA: 64.12 TB to 113.76 TB</li> <li>RECO: 7.12 TB to 12.64 TB</li> <li>REDO: 1.94 TB</li> <li>Flash: 7.16 TB to 12.5 TB</li> <li>Reservation: 58.96 TB</li> </ul>

## Usable Free Space with Oracle ASM

When Oracle ASM calculates usable Free Space, it determines the amount of space to reserve in the case of a disk failure.

For Oracle Database Appliance with 2 or 4 NVMe drives, this reserved space is not required. When you query Oracle ASM or Oracle Database Appliance commands to view the amount of storage available, the `usable_File_MB` value may report a negative number.

**Table B-5 Oracle ASM Calculations**

Number of Drives	Redundancy	Total_MB	Free_MB	Req_mir_free_MB	Usable_file_MB	Name
2	NORMAL	4894016	4893372	0	1220644	RECO/
4	NORMAL	1231176	1230996	610468	305150	RECO/

 **Note:**

Note: 1TB = MB divided by 1024<sup>2</sup>

### How Oracle ASM and Oracle Database Appliance Define Capacity

The following table describes how capacity terms are defined by Oracle ASM and Oracle Database Appliance.

**Table B-6 Definition of Terminology**

<b>Term</b>	<b>Oracle ASM Definition</b>	<b>Oracle Database Appliance Definition</b>
Total_MB	Size of the disk group in MB	Total usable storage. For example, for 2 NVMe drives, total usable storage is 5.8TB.
Free_MB	Free space in the disk group in MB, without regard to redundancy.	Total usable storage after formatting to Oracle ASM disk groups. For example, for 2 NVMe drives, total usable storage is 5.8TB.
Req_mir_free_MB	Amount of space that must be available in the disk group to restore full redundancy after the worst failure that can be tolerated by the disk group.	Total usable storage after formatting to Oracle ASM disk groups. For example, for 2 NVMe drives, total usable storage is 5.8TB.
Usable_file_MB	Amount of free space, adjusted for mirroring, that is available for new files.	Total usable space taking into consideration the mirroring level. Oracle ASM also calculates the amount of space required.

# C

## Creating an Appliance Using JSON File

Understand the process to create an appliance using the command `odacli create-appliance` and view an example JSON file.

- [Loading and Saving Appliance Configurations](#)  
You can load a saved JSON file and use it to configure your appliance, and save an existing configuration as a JSON file from the Web Console.
- [Readme for the Command `odacli create-appliance`](#)  
If you want to create the appliance outside of the Web Console, then review the readme file for details on how to create a JSON file to use with the command-line interface.
- [Example JSON Files to Create a Single Node Appliance with the CLI](#)  
Follow these JSON file examples to create a JSON file to deploy a single node appliance with the command `odacli create-appliance`.
- [Example JSON File to Create a Multi-Node Appliance with the CLI](#)  
Follow the JSON file example to create a JSON file to deploy a multi-node appliance with the command `odacli create-appliance`.

## Loading and Saving Appliance Configurations

You can load a saved JSON file and use it to configure your appliance, and save an existing configuration as a JSON file from the Web Console.

### Using a Saved Configuration to Create a New Appliance in the Web Console

You can load a saved configuration from your client machine, and create a new appliance.

1. Log into the Web Console.
2. In the Create Appliance page, click **Browse** next to Load Configuration.
3. Select the JSON file from the local machine, being used to access the Web Console.
4. The appliance configuration values from the JSON file are populated in the fields on the Create Appliance page.
5. Make any changes required, and submit the request to create the appliance  
Note that for security requirements, you must enter passwords manually.

### Saving an Appliance Configuration from the Web Console

You can save an appliance configuration and use it to create another appliance.

1. Log into the Web Console.
2. If you have already configured your appliance, then in the Create Appliance page, click **Save Configuration**.

3. The configuration is saved as a JSON file on the local machine, being used to access the Web Console.

## Readme for the Command `odacli create-appliance`

If you want to create the appliance outside of the Web Console, then review the readme file for details on how to create a JSON file to use with the command-line interface.

You can use the command `odacli create-appliance` and a JSON file that includes your appliance configuration settings to deploy the appliance instead of using the Web Console.

### Note:

It is important to review the readme and the examples carefully before creating your JSON file. If you do not enter your network and Oracle ILOM information correctly based on your setup, you will lose network access to both the host and Oracle ILOM.

### Readme

The readme is located in the `/opt/oracle/dcs/sample` directory. Review the readme carefully along with the provided JSON example files. Create a JSON file with the necessary changes based on your environment and requirements.

## Example JSON Files to Create a Single Node Appliance with the CLI

Follow these JSON file examples to create a JSON file to deploy a single node appliance with the command `odacli create-appliance`.

Use the example JSON files and the information located in the readme as a template to create a file for your environment. Examples and the readme are located in the `/opt/oracle/dcs/sample` directory.

### Note:

If you do not enter your network and Oracle ILOM information correctly based on your setup, then network access is lost to both the host and Oracle ILOM.

When using the example to create your JSON file, change the definitions to match your environment. The password must meet password requirements.

### Example C-1 JSON File to Create a Single Node Oracle Database Appliance with Role Separation

The following is an example of a JSON file that creates a single node appliance on Oracle Database Appliance. The example uses role separation.

```
{
  "instance" : {
    "name" : "odambox",
    "instanceBaseName" : "odambox-c",
    "dbEdition" : "EE",
    "timeZone" : "UTC",
    "ntpServers" : ["10.0.3.14"],
    "dnsServers" : ["10.0.4.10","10.0.4.11","10.0.4.12"],
    "domainName" : "example.com",
    "isRoleSeparated" : true,
    "osUserGroup" : {
      "groups" : [ {
        "groupId" : 1001,
        "groupName" : "oinstall",
        "groupRole" : "oinstall"
      }, {
        "groupId" : 1002,
        "groupName" : "dbaoper",
        "groupRole" : "dbaoper"
      }, {
        "groupId" : 1003,
        "groupName" : "dba",
        "groupRole" : "dba"
      }, {
        "groupId" : 1004,
        "groupName" : "asmadmin",
        "groupRole" : "asmadmin"
      }, {
        "groupId" : 1005,
        "groupName" : "asmoper",
        "groupRole" : "asmoper"
      }, {
        "groupId" : 1006,
        "groupName" : "asmdba",
        "groupRole" : "asmdba"
      } ],
      "users" : [ {
        "userId" : 1000,
        "userName" : "oracle",
        "userRole" : "oracleUser"
      }, {
        "userId" : 1001,
        "userName" : "grid",
        "userRole" : "gridUser"
      } ]
    }
  },
  "nodes" : [ {
    "nodeNumber" : "0",
```

```

"nodeName" : "odambox",
"network" : [ {
  "nicName" : "btbond1",
  "ipAddress" : "10.0.1.11",
  "subNetMask" : "255.255.240.0",
  "gateway" : "10.0.0.1",
  "networkType" : [ "Public" ],
  "isDefaultNetwork" : true
},
],
"ilom" : {
  "ilomName": "odambox-c",
  "ipAddress": "10.0.2.10",
  "subNetMask": "255.255.240.0",
  "gateway": "10.0.0.1"
}
} ],
"grid" : {
  "diskGroup" : [ {
    "diskGroupName" : "DATA",
    "redundancy" : "NORMAL",
    "diskPercentage" : 80
  }, {
    "diskGroupName" : "RECO",
    "redundancy" : "NORMAL",
    "diskPercentage" : 20
  } ],
"scan" : {
  "scanName": "odambox-scan",
  "ipAddresses": [
    "10.0.1.11"
  ]
},
"vip": [
  {
    "nodeNumber": "0",
    "vipName": "odambox-vip",
    "ipAddress": "10.0.1.11"
  }
],
"language" : "en",
"enableAFD": "TRUE"
},
"database" : {
  "dbName" : "myTestDb",
  "databaseUniqueName": "myTestDb_sealkj",
  "dbEdition" : "EE",
  "dbVersion" : "12.2.0.1",
  "dbHomeId": null,
  "instanceOnly" : false,
  "isCdb" : true,
  "pdbName" : "pdb1",
  "pdbAdminuserName" : "pdbuser",
  "enableTDE": true,
  "adminPassword" : "password",

```



```

    "dbType" : "SI",
    "dbTargetNodeNumber" : null,
    "dbClass" : "OLTP",
    "dbShape" : "odbl",
    "dbStorage" : "ACFS",
    "dbCharacterSet" : {
      "characterSet" : "AL32UTF8",
      "nlsCharacterSet" : "AL16UTF16",
      "dbTerritory" : "AMERICA",
      "dbLanguage" : "AMERICAN"
    },
    "dbConsoleEnable" : false,
    "backupConfigId":null,
    "rmanBkupPassword": null
  },
  "asr" :{
    "asrType": "INTERNAL",
    "userName": "john.smith@example.com",
    "password": "password",
    "proxyServerName": "www-proxy.example.com",
    "proxyPort": "80",
    "proxyUserName": "proxy-user",
    "proxyPassword": "proxy-password",
    "snmpVersion": "v2"
  }
}

```

### Example C-2 JSON File to Create a Single Node Oracle Database Appliance without Role Separation

The following is an example of a JSON file that creates an Oracle Database Appliance without using role separation. This example creates two groups (oinstall and dba) and one user ("oracle").

```

{
  "instance" : {
    "name" : "odambox",
    "instanceBaseName" : "odambox-c",
    "dbEdition" : "EE",
    "timeZone" : "UTC",
    "ntpServers" : ["10.0.3.14"],
    "dnsServers" : ["10.0.4.10", "10.0.4.11", "10.0.4.12"],
    "domainName" : "example.com",
    "isRoleSeparated" : false,
    "osUserGroup" : {
      "groups" : [ {
        "groupId" : 1001,
        "groupName" : "oinstall",
        "groupRole" : "oinstall"
      }, {
        "groupId" : 1002,
        "groupName" : "dba",
        "groupRole" : "dba"
      } ],
      "users" : [ {

```

```

        "userId" : 1000,
        "userName" : "oracle",
        "userRole" : "oracleUser"
    } ]
}
},
"nodes" : [ {
    "nodeNumber" : "0",
    "nodeName" : "odambox",
    "network" : [ {
        "nicName" : "btbond1",
        "ipAddress" : "10.0.1.11",
        "subNetMask" : "255.255.240.0",
        "gateway" : "10.0.0.1",
        "networkType" : [ "Public" ],
        "isDefaultNetwork" : true
    },
    ],
    "ilom" : {
        "ilomName" : "odambox-c",
        "ipAddress" : "10.0.2.10",
        "subNetMask" : "255.255.240.0",
        "gateway" : "10.0.0.1"
    }
} ],
"grid" : {
    "diskGroup" : [ {
        "diskGroupName" : "DATA",
        "redundancy" : "NORMAL",
        "diskPercentage" : 80
    }, {
        "diskGroupName" : "RECO",
        "redundancy" : "NORMAL",
        "diskPercentage" : 20
    } ],
    "scan" : {
        "scanName" : "odambox-scan",
        "ipAddresses" : [
            "10.0.1.11"
        ]
    },
    "vip" : [
        {
            "nodeNumber" : "0",
            "vipName" : "odambox-vip",
            "ipAddress" : "10.0.1.11"
        }
    ],
    "language" : "en",
    "enableAFD" : "TRUE"
},
"database" : {
    "dbName" : "myTestDb",
    "databaseUniqueName" : "myTestDb_sealkj",
    "dbEdition" : "EE",

```

```

    "dbVersion" : "12.2.0.1",
    "dbHomeId":null,
    "instanceOnly" : false,
    "isCdb" : true,
    "pdbName" : "pdb1",
    "pdbAdminuserName" : "pdbuser",
    "enableTDE":true,
    "adminPassword" : "password",
    "dbType" : "SI",
    "dbTargetNodeNumber" : null,
    "dbClass" : "OLTP",
    "dbShape" : "odbl",
    "dbStorage" : "ACFS",
    "dbCharacterSet" : {
      "characterSet" : "AL32UTF8",
      "nlsCharacterSet" : "AL16UTF16",
      "dbTerritory" : "AMERICA",
      "dbLanguage" : "AMERICAN"
    },
    "dbConsoleEnable" : false,
    "backupConfigId":null,
    "rmanBkupPassword": null
  },
  "asr" :{
    "asrType": "INTERNAL",
    "userName":"john.smith@example.com",
    "password":"password",
    "proxyServerName":"www-proxy.example.com",
    "proxyPort":"80",
    "proxyUserName":"proxy-user",
    "proxyPassword":"proxy-password",
    "snmpVersion":"v2"
  }
}

```

## Example JSON File to Create a Multi-Node Appliance with the CLI

Follow the JSON file example to create a JSON file to deploy a multi-node appliance with the command `odacli create-appliance`.

Use the example JSON files and the information located in the readme as a template to create a file for your environment. Examples and the readme are located in the `/opt/oracle/dcs/sample` directory.

### Note:

It is important to review the readme and the examples carefully before creating your JSON file. If you do not enter your network and Oracle ILOM information correctly based on your setup, then network access is lost to both the host and Oracle ILOM.

**Example C-3 JSON File to Create a Multi-Node Oracle Database Appliance with Role Separation**

The following is an example of a JSON file that creates a multi-node appliance on Oracle Database Appliance bare metal platform. The example uses role separation. When using the example to create your JSON file, change the definitions to match your environment. The password must meet password requirements.

```
{
  "instance":{
    "name":"odahabox",
    "instanceBaseName":"odahabox",
    "dbEdition":"EE",
    "timeZone":"UTC",
    "ntpServers" : ["10.0.3.14"],
    "dnsServers" : ["10.0.4.10","10.0.4.11","10.0.4.12"],
    "domainName":"example.com",
    "isRoleSeparated":true,
    "osUserGroup":{
      "groups":[
        {
          "groupId":1001,
          "groupName":"oinstall",
          "groupRole":"oinstall"
        },
        {
          "groupId":1002,
          "groupName":"dbaoper",
          "groupRole":"dbaoper"
        },
        {
          "groupId":1003,
          "groupName":"dba",
          "groupRole":"dba"
        },
        {
          "groupId":1004,
          "groupName":"asmadmin",
          "groupRole":"asmadmin"
        },
        {
          "groupId":1005,
          "groupName":"asmoper",
          "groupRole":"asmoper"
        },
        {
          "groupId":1006,
          "groupName":"asmdba",
          "groupRole":"asmdba"
        }
      ],
      "users":[
        {
          "userId":101,
          "userName":"grid",
```

```

        "userRole": "gridUser"
      },
      {
        "userId": 102,
        "userName": "oracle",
        "userRole": "oracleUser"
      }
    ]
  },
  "objectStoreCredentials": null
},
"nodes": [
  {
    "nodeNumber": "0",
    "nodeName": "odahaboxc1n2",
    "network": [
      {
        "nicName": "btbond1",
        "ipAddress": "10.31.98.133",
        "subNetMask": "255.255.240.0",
        "gateway": "10.31.96.1",
        "networkType": [
          "Public"
        ],
        "isDefaultNetwork": true
      }
    ],
    "ilom": {
      "ilomName": "odahabox2-c",
      "ipAddress": "10.31.16.140",
      "subNetMask": "255.255.240.0",
      "gateway": "10.31.16.1"
    }
  },
  {
    "nodeNumber": "1",
    "nodeName": "odahaboxc1n1",
    "network": [
      {
        "nicName": "btbond1",
        "ipAddress": "10.31.98.132",
        "subNetMask": "255.255.240.0",
        "gateway": "10.31.96.1",
        "networkType": [
          "Public"
        ],
        "isDefaultNetwork": true
      }
    ],
    "ilom": {
      "ilomName": "odahabox1-c",
      "ipAddress": "10.31.16.139",
      "subNetMask": "255.255.240.0",
      "gateway": "10.31.16.1"
    }
  }
]

```

```

    }
  ],
  "grid":{
    "diskGroup":[
      {
        "diskGroupName":"DATA",
        "redundancy":"HIGH",
        "diskPercentage":80
      },
      {
        "diskGroupName":"RECO",
        "redundancy":"HIGH",
        "diskPercentage":20
      },
      {
        "diskGroupName":"REDO",
        "redundancy":"HIGH",
        "diskPercentage":null
      }
    ],
    "scan":{
      "scanName":"odahaboxcl-scan",
      "ipAddresses":[
        "10.31.98.182",
        "10.31.98.183"
      ]
    }
  },
  "vip":[
    {
      "nodeNumber":"0",
      "vipName":"odahaboxcln2-vip",
      "ipAddress":"10.31.98.159"
    },
    {
      "nodeNumber":"1",
      "vipName":"odahaboxcln1-vip",
      "ipAddress":"10.31.98.158"
    }
  ],
  "language":"en",
  "enableAFD":"TRUE"
},
"database":{
  "dbName":"myTestDb",
  "databaseUniqueName":"myTestDb_sealkj",
  "dbVersion":"12.2.0.1",
  "dbHomeId":null,
  "instanceOnly":false,
  "isCdb":true,
  "pdbName":"pdb1",
  "pdbAdminuserName":"pdbuser",
  "enableTDE":true,
  "adminPassword":"password",
  "dbType":"RAC",
  "dbTargetNodeNumber":null,

```

```
    "dbClass": "OLTP",
    "dbShape": "odbl",
    "dbStorage": "ACFS",
    "dbCharacterSet": {
      "characterSet": "AL32UTF8",
      "nlsCharacterSet": "AL16UTF16",
      "dbTerritory": "AMERICA",
      "dbLanguage": "AMERICAN"
    },
    "dbConsoleEnable": false,
    "backupConfigId": null
  },
  "asr": null
}
```

# D

## Database Shapes for Oracle Database Appliance

Use the information in this appendix to select database shapes, or templates, for your planned databases.

- [About Database Shapes and Classes](#)  
Review this information to help determine the database shape (also known as a database template) and class to use based on the common workload your databases perform.
- [Database Shapes for the OLTP Class](#)  
Use Oracle Database Appliance OLTP Database Shapes if your database workload is primarily online transaction processing (OLTP).
- [Database Shapes for the In-Memory Class](#)  
Use Oracle Database Appliance In-Memory (IMDB) database shapes if your database workload can fit in memory, and can benefit from in-memory performance capabilities.
- [Database Shapes for the DSS Class](#)  
Use DSS database shapes if your database workload is primarily decision support services (DSS) or data warehousing.

### About Database Shapes and Classes

Review this information to help determine the database shape (also known as a database template) and class to use based on the common workload your databases perform.

Oracle Database Appliance shapes define databases with parameters selected specifically to optimize performance on Oracle Database Appliance. In addition, these shapes help you to set up appropriate instance caging and to acquire an appropriate license.

Oracle Database Appliance enables you to consolidate many databases into a single system. Consolidation can minimize idle resources, maximize efficiency, and lower costs. By using instance caging in conjunction with Oracle Database Resource Manager (the Resource Manager), you can provide desired levels of service across multiple instances on a single Oracle Database Appliance.

Oracle Database Appliance shapes are already tuned for the size of each database instance workload. They are designed to run on a specific number of cores. Caging ensures that each database workload is restricted to the set of cores allocated by the shape, enabling multiple databases to run concurrently with no performance degradation, up to the capacity of Oracle Database Appliance. You can select database shape sizes larger than your current needs to provide for planned growth, which you accommodate later by adjusting System Global Area (SGA) and Program Global Area (PGA) sizes as well as the number of cores.



 **Note:**

Oracle strongly recommends that you use the Oracle Database Appliance shapes, because they implement best practices and are configured specifically for Oracle Database Appliance.

### Choosing a Database Shape

Database shapes are configured specifically for the type of database workload that you want to carry out on your databases on Oracle Database Appliance. Choose the shape that best matches the common workload your databases perform (OLTP, DSS, In-Memory).

The database sizing tables provide shape names and sizing based on the number of CPUs and memory attributes for each type of database workload.

Identify the shape type that is appropriate to your database workload and hardware:

- Use Oracle Database Appliance OLTP Database Shapes if your database workload is primarily online transaction processing (OLTP).
- Use Oracle Database Appliance DSS database shapes if your database workload is primarily decision support services (DSS) or data warehousing.
- Use Oracle Database Appliance In-Memory (IMDB) database shapes if your database workload can fit in memory, and can benefit from in-memory performance capabilities.

Use the database shape tables to help select the best shapes for your databases. When using these tables remember the following:

- The information in the tables assumes that you are creating local disk backups. Consider the space requirements for your database and the policy for local disk backups versus external backups. Typically, external backups have more space available for the database than local backups.
- The log file size assumes three (3) REDO log groups for each instance with a log switch every 15 minutes when the system is running at full capacity.

## Database Shapes for the OLTP Class

Use Oracle Database Appliance OLTP Database Shapes if your database workload is primarily online transaction processing (OLTP).

The table lists the online transaction processing (OLTP) database shape sizes for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S, X7-2M, and X7-2-HA.

The information in the table assumes the following:

- You are creating local disk backups. Consider the space requirements for your database and the policy for local disk backups versus external backups. Typically, external backups have more space available for the database than local backups.
- The log file size assumes three (3) REDO log groups for each instance with a log switch every 15 minutes when the system is running at full capacity.

**Table D-1 Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S OLTP Database Shapes**

Shape	CPU Cores	SGA (GB)	PGA (GB)	Processes	Redo log file size (GB)	Log buffer (MB)
odb1s	1	2	1	200	4	32
odb1	1	4	2	200	4	32
odb2	2	8	4	400	4	32
odb4	4	16	8	800	4	64
odb6	6	24	12	1200	8	128
odb08	8	32	16	1600	8	128
odb10	10	40	20	2000	8	128

**Table D-2 Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M OLTP Database Shapes**

Shape	CPU Cores	SGA (GB)	PGA (GB)	Processes	Redo log file size (GB)	Log buffer (MB)
odb1s	1	2	1	200	4	32
odb1	1	4	2	200	4	32
odb2	2	8	4	400	4	32
odb4	4	16	8	800	4	64
odb6	6	24	12	1200	8	128
odb08	8	32	16	1600	8	128
odb10	10	40	20	2000	8	128
odb12	12	48	24	2400	16	128
odb16	16	64	32	3200	16	128
odb20	20	80	40	4000	16	128
odb24	24	96	48	4800	16	128
odb28	28	112	56	5600	16	128
odb32	32	128	64	6400	16	128
odb36	36	144	72	7200	16	128

**Table D-3 Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA OLTP Database Shapes**

Shape	CPU Cores	SGA (GB)	PGA (GB)	Processes	Redo log file size (GB)	Log buffer (MB)
odb1s	1	2	1	200	4	32
odb1	1	4	2	200	4	32
odb2	2	8	4	400	4	32
odb4	4	16	8	800	4	64
odb6	6	24	12	1200	8	128
odb08	8	32	16	1600	8	128

**Table D-3 (Cont.) Oracle Database Appliance X7-2-HA OLTP Database Shapes**

Shape	CPU Cores	SGA (GB)	PGA (GB)	Processes	Redo log file size (GB)	Log buffer (MB)
odb10	10	40	20	2000	8	128
odb12	12	48	24	2400	16	128
odb16	16	64	32	3200	16	128
odb20	20	80	40	4000	16	128
odb24	24	96	48	4800	16	128
odb28	28	112	56	5600	16	128
odb32	32	128	64	6400	16	128
odb36	36	144	72	7200	16	128

## Database Shapes for the In-Memory Class

Use Oracle Database Appliance In-Memory (IMDB) database shapes if your database workload can fit in memory, and can benefit from in-memory performance capabilities.

The table lists the In-Memory database shape sizes for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S, X7-2M, and X7-2-HA.

The information in the table assumes the following:

- You are creating local disk backups. Consider the space requirements for your database and the policy for local disk backups versus external backups. Typically, external backups have more space available for the database than local backups.
- The log file size assumes three (3) REDO log groups for each instance with a log switch every 15 minutes when the system is running at full capacity.

**Table D-4 Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S In-Memory Database Shapes**

Shape	CPU Cores	SGA (GB)	PGA (GB)	In-Memory (GB)	Processes	Redo log file size (GB)	Log buffer (MB)
odb1s	1	2	1	1	200	4	32
odb1	1	4	2	2	200	4	32
odb2	2	8	4	4	400	4	32
odb4	4	16	8	8	800	4	64
odb6	6	24	12	12	1200	8	128
odb08	8	32	16	16	1600	8	128
odb10	10	40	20	20	2000	8	128

**Table D-5 Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M and X7- 2-HA In-Memory Database Shapes**

Shape	CPU Cores	SGA (GB)	PGA (GB)	In-Memory (GB)	Processes	Redo log file size (GB)	Log buffer (MB)
odb1s	1	2	1	1	200	4	32

**Table D-5 (Cont.) Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M and X7- 2-HA In-Memory Database Shapes**

Shape	CPU Cores	SGA (GB)	PGA (GB)	In-Memory (GB)	Processes	Redo log file size (GB)	Log buffer (MB)
odb1	1	4	2	2	200	4	32
odb2	2	8	4	4	400	4	32
odb4	4	16	8	8	800	4	64
odb6	6	24	12	12	1200	8	128
odb08	8	32	16	16	1600	8	128
odb10	10	40	20	20	2000	8	128
odb12	12	48	24	24	2400	16	128
odb16	16	64	32	32	3200	16	128
odb20	20	80	40	40	4000	16	128
odb24	24	96	48	48	4800	16	128
odb28	28	112	56	56	5600	16	128
odb32	32	128	64	64	6400	16	128
odb36	36	144	72	72	7200	16	128

## Database Shapes for the DSS Class

Use DSS database shapes if your database workload is primarily decision support services (DSS) or data warehousing.

The table lists the DSS database shape sizes for Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S, X7-2M, and X7-2-HA.

The information in the table assumes the following:

- You are creating local disk backups. Consider the space requirements for your database and the policy for local disk backups versus external backups. Typically, external backups have more space available for the database than local backups.
- The log file size assumes three (3) REDO log groups for each instance with a log switch every 15 minutes when the system is running at full capacity.

**Table D-6 Oracle Database Appliance X7-2S DSS Database Shapes**

Shape	CPU Cores	SGA (GB)	PGA (GB)	Processes	Redo log file size (GB)	Log buffer (MB)
odb1s	1	1	2	200	4	32
odb1	1	2	4	200	4	32
odb2	2	4	8	400	4	32
odb4	4	8	16	800	4	64
odb6	6	12	24	1200	8	128
odb08	8	16	32	1600	8	128
odb10	10	20	40	2000	8	128

**Table D-7 Oracle Database Appliance X7-2M and X7-2-HA DSS Database Shapes**

Shape	CPU Cores	SGA (GB)	PGA (GB)	Processes	Redo log file size (GB)	Log buffer (MB)
odb1s	1	1	2	200	4	32
odb1	1	2	4	200	4	32
odb2	2	4	8	400	4	32
odb4	4	8	16	800	4	64
odb6	6	12	24	1200	8	128
odb08	8	16	32	1600	8	128
odb10	10	20	40	2000	8	128
odb12	12	24	48	2400	16	128
odb16	16	32	64	3200	16	128
odb20)	20	40	80	4000	16	128
odb24	24	48	96	4800	16	128
odb28	28	56	112	5600	16	128
odb32	32	64	128	6400	16	128
odb36	36	72	144	7200	16	128

# Glossary

# Index

## Numerics

---

10GBase-T (copper) network ports, [3-1](#), [3-4](#)  
25GbE SFP28 (fiber) network ports, [3-1](#), [3-4](#)

## A

---

ACFS, [B-1](#), [B-2](#)  
ACFS mount points, [B-2](#)  
administrative account users, [7-1](#)  
administrative accounts, [7-1](#)  
agent  
    update, [12-35–12-38](#)  
agent proxy setting, [10-10](#)  
ASM, [B-1](#)  
ASR  
    configure, [12-113](#)  
    delete, [12-118](#)  
    details, [12-116](#)  
    test, [12-117](#)  
    update, [12-115](#)  
Automatic Storage Management  
    See Oracle ASM

## B

---

back up database, [10-13](#)  
backup and recovery  
    CLI commands, [12-52](#)  
    RMAN, [7-2](#)  
backup databases, [10-1](#)  
backup location  
    disk group, [1-1](#)  
backup policy, [10-15](#), [10-16](#)  
    update, [10-12](#)  
backup to external FRA, [10-11](#)  
backup to internal FRA, [10-11](#)  
backup to NFS location, [10-11](#)  
backup to Object Store, [10-11](#)  
bill of materials, [13-2](#)  
bond  
    network interface, [9-1](#)  
bridge  
    network interface, [9-1](#)

## C

---

cabling, [3-1](#)  
    validate, [12-135](#)  
cleanup utility, [6-1](#)  
cleanup.pl, [6-1](#), [13-6](#)  
CLI commands  
    configure, [12-7](#)  
cloning database, [7-9](#), [7-10](#)  
Configuration Audit Tool (ORAchk), [13-6](#)  
configure CLI commands  
    configure-firstnet, [12-7](#)  
configure-firstnet, [4-1](#)  
CPU  
    commands, [12-71](#)  
CPU core  
    current configuration, [12-72](#)  
    enable, [12-72](#)  
CPU cores  
    configuration history, [12-71](#)  
    list, [12-71](#)  
create appliance, [4-8](#)

## D

---

DATA disk group, [B-4](#)  
database, [1-1](#), [7-12](#), [D-2](#), [D-4](#), [D-5](#)  
    backup policy, [10-12](#)  
    block size, [1-1](#)  
    clone from backup, [7-8](#)  
    create, [7-4](#)  
    delete, [7-11](#), [7-13](#)  
    details, [7-4](#)  
    home, [7-12](#)  
        create multiple, [7-12](#)  
        multiple, [7-12](#)  
    language, [1-1](#)  
    list, [7-4](#)  
    register, [12-81](#)  
    template  
        See shape, database  
    territory, [1-1](#)  
    upgrade, [7-11](#)  
database backup  
    delete, [10-14](#)

database classes, [D-1](#)  
 database home  
   create, [7-13](#)  
   details, [7-13](#)  
   display details, [12-90](#)  
   list, [7-13](#)  
 database shapes, [D-1](#), [D-2](#), [D-4](#), [D-5](#)  
   about, [D-1](#)  
 database storage, [B-1](#)  
   commands, [12-90](#)  
   create, [12-93](#)  
   display details, [12-92](#), [12-95](#)  
   list, [12-91](#)  
 database, register, [7-17](#)  
 default groups and users, [A-3](#)  
 deleting backups, [10-23](#)  
 DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)  
   connect to Oracle ILOM, [3-6](#)  
   Oracle ILOM configuration, [3-6](#)  
 directory paths, [A-1](#)  
 disk  
   replace, [8-3](#)  
 disk group redundancy, [B-1](#)  
 disk group sizes, [A-3](#)  
 disk group storage  
   describe, [12-95](#)  
   list, [12-97](#)  
 downloading software, [4-6](#)  
 DSS  
   database shape, [D-5](#)  
 Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol  
   See DHCP

## E

---

electrical power cords  
   connecting, [3-5](#)  
 EM Express, [7-20](#)  
 external FRA, [10-1](#)

## F

---

flex diskgroup, [7-4](#)

## G

---

Grid user, [7-1](#)  
 groups and users defaults, [A-3](#)

## H

---

Host Public Addresses  
   IP address, [1-8](#)

## I

---

IMDB  
   database shape, [D-4](#)  
 install software, [4-7](#)  
 installed version  
   display, [12-18](#), [12-24](#), [12-25](#), [12-28](#), [12-31](#)  
 instance caging, [7-19](#)  
   enable, [7-19](#)  
 Integrated Lights Out Manager  
   See Oracle ILOM  
 internal FRA, [10-1](#)

## J

---

JSON file, [C-2](#), [C-7](#)

## K

---

KVM  
   about, [11-1](#)

## L

---

LED  
   status when blinking, [3-7](#)  
   status when steady, [3-7](#)  
   status when steady on, [3-7](#)  
 LED indicators  
   NVMe, [8-3](#)  
 listener.ora, configure, [7-15](#)  
 load configuration, [C-1](#)  
 log files, [A-1](#)  
   sending to Oracle Support Services, [13-19](#)  
 logs  
   storage diagnostic, [12-42](#), [12-105](#)

## M

---

migration  
   from an existing database, [7-2](#)  
 multiple database instances  
   instance caging, [7-19](#)  
 multiple Oracle homes, [7-12](#)  
   create, [7-12](#)  
 My Oracle Support, [13-19](#)  
   send log files for troubleshooting, [13-19](#)

## N

---

network  
   configure, [12-7](#)  
   interfaces, [9-3](#)  
   list, [9-3](#)



network cabling, [3-4](#)  
network infrastructure, [9-1](#)  
network interface  
  default values, [9-1](#)  
network ports, [3-1](#), [3-4](#)  
network time protocol service (NTP service), [1-1](#)  
NFS backup, [10-8](#)  
NTP service  
  See network time protocol service  
NVMe  
  disk location, [8-3](#)  
  LED indicators, [8-3](#)

## O

### oakcli commands

  show power  
  example, [13-12](#)

### Object Store, [10-10](#)

  credentials, [12-55](#), [12-58](#), [12-64](#), [12-69](#)

### odaadmcli commands

  expand storage, [12-127](#)  
  hardware configuration, [12-121](#)  
  hardware monitoring, [12-121](#)  
  manage diagcollect, [12-105](#), [13-19](#)  
  orachk, [12-42](#)  
  power disk, [12-134](#)  
  show controller, [12-131](#)  
  show cooling, [12-121](#)  
  show disk, [12-128](#)  
  show diskgroup, [12-130](#)  
  show env\_hw, [12-122](#)  
  show fs, [12-122](#)  
  show memory, [12-123](#)  
  show network, [12-124](#)  
  show power, [12-125](#)  
  show processor, [12-125](#)  
  show raidsyncstatus, [12-132](#)  
  show server, [12-126](#)  
  show storage, [12-132](#)  
  storage, [12-127](#)  
  stordiag, [12-133](#)

### odacli commands

  appliance, [12-43](#)  
  apply patch, [12-17](#)  
  backup, [12-52](#)  
  cleanup-patchrepo, [12-29](#)  
  clone-database, [12-79](#)  
  configure-asr, [12-113](#)  
  configure-network, [12-12](#)  
  CPU core, [12-71](#)  
  create database, [7-12](#)  
  create-appliance, [12-44](#)  
  create-auto-logclean-policy, [12-111](#)  
  create-backup, [12-53](#)

### odacli commands (*continued*)

  create-backupconfig, [12-54](#)  
  create-database, [12-75](#)  
  create-dbhome, [12-89](#)  
  create-dbstorage, [12-93](#)  
  create-logcleanjob, [12-108](#)  
  create-network, [12-11](#)  
  create-objectstoreswift, [12-55](#)  
  create-prepatchreport, [12-24](#)  
  database, [12-73](#)  
  database storage, [12-90](#)  
  DBHome, [12-87](#)  
  delete-asr, [12-118](#)  
  delete-backup, [12-56](#)  
  delete-backupconfig, [12-57](#)  
  delete-database, [12-86](#)  
  delete-dbhome, [12-90](#)  
  delete-dbstorage, [12-95](#)  
  delete-network, [12-14](#)  
  delete-objectstoreswift, [12-58](#)  
  delete-prepatchreport, [12-31](#)  
  describe-appliance, [12-44](#)  
  describe-asr, [12-116](#)  
  describe-backupreport, [12-59](#)  
  describe-component, [12-18](#)  
  describe-cpucores, [12-72](#)  
  describe-database, [12-74](#)  
  describe-dbhome, [12-88](#)  
  describe-dbstorage, [12-92](#)  
  describe-dgstorage, [12-95](#)  
  describe-job, [12-103](#)  
  describe-latestpatch, [12-23](#)  
  describe-logcleanjob, [12-110](#)  
  describe-network, [12-10](#)  
  describe-networkinterface, [12-15](#)  
  describe-prepatchreport, [12-25](#)  
  describe-schedule, [12-60](#)  
  describe-system, [12-45](#)  
  irestore-database, [12-61](#)  
  jobs, [12-99](#)  
  list scheduler jobs, [12-103](#)  
  list-auto-logclean-policy, [12-112](#)  
  list-backupconfig, [12-63](#)  
  list-backupreports, [12-63](#)  
  list-cpucores, [12-71](#)  
  list-databases, [12-74](#)  
  list-dbhomes, [12-87](#)  
  list-dbstorages, [12-91](#)  
  list-featuretracking, [12-48](#)  
  list-jobs, [12-99](#)  
  list-logcleanjobs, [12-109](#)  
  list-logspaceusage, [12-107](#)  
  list-networkinterfaces, [12-16](#)  
  list-networks, [12-9](#)  
  list-osconfigurations, [12-119](#)

- odacli commands (*continued*)
    - list-prepatchreports, [12-28](#)
    - list-scheduled-executions, [12-103](#)
    - list-schedules, [12-64](#)
    - modify-database, [12-80](#)
    - network, [12-7](#)
    - odacli create-appliance, [C-2](#), [C-7](#)
    - odacli list-agentconfig-parameters, [12-32](#)
    - odacli list-availablepatches, [12-30](#)
    - odacli list-dgstorages, [12-97](#)
    - odacli list-objectstoreswifts, [12-64](#)
    - odacli update-agentconfig-parameters, [12-33](#)
    - Oracle ASR, [12-113](#)
    - OS, [12-118](#)
    - recover-database, [12-65](#)
    - recovery, [12-52](#)
    - register-database, [12-81](#)
    - show -h
      - with Oracle Database Appliance Hardware Monitoring Tool, [13-12](#)
    - storage, [12-127](#)
    - test-asr, [12-117](#)
    - update, [12-17](#)
    - update database home, [12-34](#)
    - update repository, [12-39](#)
    - update-asr, [12-115](#)
    - update-backupconfig, [12-66](#)
    - update-cpucore, [12-72](#)
    - update-database, [12-67](#)
    - update-dcsadmin, [12-35](#)
    - update-dcsagent, [12-37](#)
    - update-dcscomponents, [12-36](#)
    - update-network, [12-13](#)
    - update-objectstoreswift, [12-69](#)
    - update-osconfigurations, [12-119](#)
    - update-registry, [12-38](#)
    - update-schedule, [12-70](#)
    - update-server, [12-41](#)
    - update-storage, [12-43](#)
    - upgrade-database, [12-84](#)
    - validate storage topology, [12-135](#)
    - validate-storagetopology, [12-135](#)
  - odacli create-appliance
    - example JSON files, [C-2](#), [C-7](#)
    - readme, [C-2](#)
  - odacli-adm commands
    - set-credential, [12-51](#)
  - odaeraser.py, [6-5](#)
  - OINSTALL group, [7-1](#)
  - OLTP
    - database shape, [D-2](#)
  - Optimal Flexible Architecture and Oracle homes, [A-1](#)
  - Oracle ASM (Oracle Automatic Storage Management)
    - data migration, [7-2](#)
    - trace file analyzer diagnostics, [13-8](#)
    - user group, [A-3](#)
  - Oracle ASR
    - commands, [12-113](#)
    - configure, [12-113](#)
  - Oracle ASR (Oracle Auto Service Request), [1-1](#)
  - Oracle Automatic Storage Management
    - See Oracle ASM
  - Oracle Database
    - See database
  - Oracle Database Appliance Hardware Monitoring Tool, [13-12](#)
  - Oracle Database Appliance Manager
    - software inventory, [2-3](#)
  - Oracle Database Resource Manager
    - instance caging, [7-19](#)
  - Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Express, [7-20](#)
  - Oracle home
    - multiple, [7-12](#)
  - Oracle ILOM (Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager), [1-1](#)
    - configure, [3-6](#)
  - Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager
    - See Oracle ILOM
  - Oracle ORAchk Health Check Tool, [13-6](#)
  - Oracle RAC (Oracle Real Application Clusters)
    - trace file analyzer, [13-8](#)
  - Oracle Real Application Clusters
    - See Oracle RAC
  - Oracle Support Services
    - See My Oracle Support
  - Oracle user, [7-1](#)
  - OS configuration
    - current, [12-119](#)
    - suggested, [12-119](#)
  - OSASM group, [7-1](#)
  - OSDBA, [7-1](#)
  - OSDBA for ASM group, [7-1](#)
  - OSDBA group, [7-1](#)
  - OSOPER groups, [7-1](#)
- ## P
- 
- patches
    - software inventory, [2-3](#)
  - plumb network, [4-1](#)
  - power cords
    - connecting, [3-5](#)
  - proxy setting, [10-10](#)

---

## R

readme, [C-2](#)  
recover database, [10-20](#)  
recovering database, [10-14](#)  
reimage appliance, [6-3](#)  
restore baremetal system, [6-3](#)  
restore database, [10-22](#)  
RMAN (Recovery Manager utility)  
    database management, [7-2](#)  
RPM drift, [13-2](#)

---

## S

save configuration, [C-1](#)  
scheduler  
    jobs, [12-103](#)  
Scheduling Database Backups, [10-19](#)  
secure erase tool, [6-5](#)  
    odaeraser.py, [6-5](#)  
sending log files to Oracle Support Services,  
    [13-19](#)  
shapes, [D-1](#)  
    database  
        choosing, [D-1](#)  
        OLTP, [D-2](#), [D-4](#), [D-5](#)  
space management, [B-2](#)  
SQL\*Loader, [7-2](#)  
start up the system, [3-7](#)  
static listener, configure, [7-15](#)  
storage, [8-1](#), [B-4](#)  
    expand, [8-3](#)  
storage disks  
    location, [8-3](#)

---

## T

TFA command, [13-9](#)  
TFA options, [13-9](#)  
Trace File Analyzer (TFA) Collector, [13-9](#)  
Trace File Analyzer utility, [13-8](#)  
troubleshooting, [13-6](#)  
    hrd disk diagnostic tool, [13-8](#)  
    log files for Oracle Support Services, [13-19](#)  
    trace file analyzer, [13-8](#)  
turning on Oracle Database Appliance, [3-7](#)

---

## U

uninstall, [6-1](#)  
usable storage, [B-4](#)

---

## V

viewing backup reports, [10-13](#)  
virtual local area network, [9-1](#)  
virtualization  
    about, [11-1](#)  
VLAN, [9-1](#)

---

## W

web console, [C-1](#)  
Web Console  
    about, [2-5](#)  
    actions, [2-5](#)  
web interface  
    Oracle Enterprise Manager Database  
        Express, [7-20](#)